Hello English

Second Term





blog	مدونــــة	evident	واضــــح	equipment	معييدات
personal	شخصـــي	traditional	تقليدي	relating to	مرتبط بـ
diary	مفكـــرة	traditions	تقاليـــد	ability	قــــدرة
social	اجتماعيي	persuade	يقنــــع	popular	شعبي – محبوب
society	مجتمــع	persuasion	إقنــــاع	popularity	شعبيـــة
site	موقع نت	official	رسمـــي	common	شــــائع
website	موقع نت	officially	رسميـــا	text message	رسالة نصية
share with	يشـــارك مع	details	تفاصيــل	continue	يستمـــر
interests	اهتمامــات	detailed	مفصـــل	complex	معقد
advertise	يعلن عن	exchange	يتبـــادل	further	ابعد - أكثر
advertisement	إعــــلان	join	يلتحق بـ	helmet	خـــوذة
apply	يتقدم بطلب	connect	يوصــل	brain	المخ
applicant	متقدم بطلب	disconnect	يفصـــل	washing machine	غسالـــــة
complicated	معقىد	connection	وصلـــة	special	خاص 🗕 مميز
comment	تعليـــق	development	تطوير - تنمية		شريـــك
message	رسالــــة	device	جهاز - آلة	replace	يحل محل
immediately	فــــورا	digital	رقمــي	consider	يعتبسر
sports club	نادي رياضي	fax : facsimile	صورة طبق الأصل	process	عمليــة
amazing	مدهش	high-quality	عالي الجودة	combination	مجموعـــة
practise	يمارس		ذکي - أنيق	electrical	کھربـــي
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	technology	تقنيـــة	electricity	الكهربساء
waste	يضيــــع	visual	بصـــري	produce	ينتـــج
particular	معین ۔ محدد	ring	يتصــل بـ	production	إنتسساج
subject	موضوع		نتيجــــة	products	منتجات
update	يحدث - يطور		غـــرض	serve	يخدم - يقدم طعام
instead	بدلا من ذلك	signal	إشـــــارة	services	خدمـــات
Instead of	بدلا من		شبكة - نظام	find out	يكتشف
stand still	يبقي ساكنا	document	وثيقــــة	emergency	حالــة طارئة
prediction	تنبيو	print	يطبــــع		قيود
generation	جيــــل	standard	مستــوي	overuse	يفرط في استخدام
based on	قائم علي	method	طريقــــة	annoying	مزعـــج
evidence	دليــــل	industrial		overhear	يسمع دون قصد
reply to	يــرد علي			conversations	محادثية
signal	إشــــارة	get involved in	يشترك في	rather than	بدلا من

Expressions

	-		
social networking sites	مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي		يتحدث إلي
make new friends	يكون صداقات جديدة	power of thought	قوة التفكيمير
at the top of the page	أعلي الصفحة	connected to	موصـــل بـ
make comments on	يعلق علي	agree with an opinion	يتفق مع رأي
post a letter	يرسل خطاب عبر البريد	keep in touch with	يواکب - يساير
make a promise	يقدم وعدا	cope with : keep up with	يواکب - يساير
on the edge of	علي حافــــة	keep track of	يواکب - يساير
do research	يجري بحثا	replace: take the place of	يحل محل
five-year-old girl	بنت عمرها خمس سنوات	satellite navigation	تحديد اتجاه عبر الأقمار الصناعية
	<u></u>		



Hello English

Second Term

etc. : et cetera		إلي آخره	find out about		يتعرف علي
be away		غائب	take into consideration	بار	يأخذ في الاعتب
online		متصل بالانترنت	keep in touch with		يكون علي اتصال ب
offline		غير متصل بالانترنت	go on a business trip		يقوم برحلة عمل
stand still		يقف ساكنا	share		يشارك مع
		Def	initions		
interests	activ	vities you enjoy doing (or subjects that you enjoy s	studying	اهتمامات
advertise	to te		uct or service in order to per		يعنن عن
apply	etc.,	especially by writing a		•	يتقدم بطلب
complicated	diffe	erent parts or details	eal with because it contains	-	معقد
comment		an opinion that you give about someone or something			تعليـــق
online	connected to the internet				عبر الانترنت
social networking	website where people can write information about themselves				موقع تواصل
site	and share it with other people اجتماعي				
website pla		place on the internet where you can go to find out information			موقع نت
websile	about a company, person, subject, etc.			مرج ت	
internet	a system that allow people using computers around the world to exchange information			e world	الانترنت
blog	personal website diary for other people to read				مدونــــة
connect	to join two places or things together				يوصل
development	the process of becoming bigger, better, more important etc., or the result of this process			تطوير - تنمية	
device	a machine or tool used for a particular purpose				جهاز - آلة
digital	using a system in which information is shown in the form of changing electrical signals			رقمـــي	
fax	a document that is sent down a telephone line and then printed using a special machine			n printed	فاكسس
high-quality	a go	od standard			عالي الجودة
smart			uters or the latest methods t		ذكي
technology		mbination of all the kn are used in scientific o	owledge, equipment, metho or industrial work	ds etc.	تقنيــــة
visual	relat	ing to seeing or your a	bility to see		بصري

Derivatives

					-
Verb		Noun		Adjective	
interest	يه	interests	اهتمامات	interested	مهتـــم
apply	يتقدم بطلب	application	طلب التحاق		
predict	يتنبأ	prediction	تنبئ	predictable	متوقــع
persuade	يقنــــع	persuasion	إقنــــاع	persuasive	مقنــــع
complicate	يعقد	complication	تعقيد	complicated	معقيد
connect	يوصــل	connection	وصلـــة	connected	موَصــل
communicate	يتصـــل	communications	اتصالات		
develop	يطور	development	تطوير - تنمية	developed	متطـــور
practise	يمارس	practice	ممارســـة	practical	عملي
equip	يعد - يجهز	equipment	معدات	equipped	مجهـــز
amaze	یدهش	amazement	دهشـــة	amazed	مندهـــش

🗶 Language Notes 💥

1- لاحظ الاختصارات التالية لهذه الأسماع

fax
electronic mail
sat nav

facsimile : a copy of.

- television : TV

101/10 Sta

e-mailsatellite navigation

2

- the internet : the net

Hello English

2- diary	مفكرة - يوميات	- I used to keep a diary of events	during the war
dairy		ilding, room, or establishment for t	
3- site		of milk and milk توزيع distribution This web site offers a lot of serv	
location		- The dam lies in a good location	
sight	ولي جراعي (حص) المسوير حاسة الإبصار	- He lost his sight when he got of	
sights	معالم سياحية	- Egypt is full of fantastic sights.	
5	1	ا تصف الأشخاص و الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (g	4- ع <i>ادة</i> الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (ed)
amazed	مندهش	- amazing	مدهش
interested	مهتــــم خائف	- interesting	شيــق
frightened		- frightening	مخيف
tired	مرهَــق	- tiring	مر هـ_ق
tired man	رجل مر هَــق	- tiring boy	* و لکن یمکن أن نقول : ولد مرهـــق
4- (be) based on	ربل مربسی قائم علی	- Success in life is based on hard	
(be) based in	مقرہ فی	- The national bank is based in C	
5- share in	يشارك في	- Messi will share in the next mat	
wit مفعول + share	T	- He shared the meal with his frie	
از - آلة 6- device		- He invented a device for catchi	ng flies.
7- purpose	غرض	- The purpose of the meeting is t	o solve our problems.
suppose	يفترض	- I'm supposed to meet someone	e at the airport tonight.
8- special	خاص (مميز)	- They always made a special ef	
private		- He doesn't like anyone to use h	
9- connect	يوصل	- She connected her computer to	•
	nicate with يتصل بـ nicate with		m the news.
10- social sociable	اجتماعي (کاص بالمجتمع) اجتماعي (ودود)	Poverty is a social problem.Our uncle is very sociable. We	all like him
11- visual	(بينامي (ووود)) بصري	- visible	يمكن رؤيته
12- advertise	يعلن عن (سلعة)	- announce	يعلن (يصرح)
13- connected to	یہ تا تا ہے۔		مرتبط بـ / على علاقة
14- industrial	-		صناعي (من صنع الإ
15- make life easier	جعل الحياه أستهل	🛁 🚽 - The internet has made o	our life easier.
15- make life easier 16- deal with	جعل الحياة (سهل تعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة)	 The internet has made a It's difficult to deal with t 	our life easier. hese people / problem.
16- deal with	تعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة)	 It's difficult to deal with t time word or phrase when it 	hese people / problem. starts a sentence:
16- deal with	تعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة)	 It's difficult to deal with t 	hese people / problem. starts a sentence:
16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there	تعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a comma after ea و	 It's difficult to deal with t time word or phrase when it 	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: - إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا
16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there	تعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a comma after ea و	lt's difficult to deal with t - ي الم الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ا	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: - إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt.
16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u>	یتعامل مع - یعالج (مشکلة) is a comma after ea communications be	lt's difficult to deal with t - يا الم time word or phrase when it لوقت نضع بعدها فاصلــــــة :- tween people were very differei	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: - إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years.
16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad	تعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a comma after ea communications be خارج البلاد	اt's difficult to deal with t - ي الوقت نضع بعدها فاصلــــــة :- tween people were very differen - She has been living abr	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: - إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard.
16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard	تعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a comma after ea communications be خارج البلاد علي متن يركب	الا's difficult to deal with t المقت نضع بعدها فاصلــــــة :- tween people were very differen - She has been living abr - The plane crashed, killir	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: - إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London
16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board	تعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a comma after ea communications be خارج البلاد علي متن يركب	الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الل	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: - إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London
16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board	تعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a comma after ea communications be خارج البلاد علي متن يركب be interested in	 It's difficult to deal with t 	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: - إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London
 16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board 19- have interest : 	تعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a comma after ea communications be خارج البلاد علي متن يركب be interested in <u>MAKIN</u>	 It's difficult to deal with t 	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: - إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London <u>interest in</u> music.
 16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board 19- have interest : - Do you have any p 	تعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a comma after ea communications be خارج البلاد علي متن يركب be interested in <u>MAKIN</u> dans ?	 It's difficult to deal with t 	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: - إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London <u>interest in</u> music. ans for the weekend?
 16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board 19- have interest : - Do you have any p - My plan is to 	يتعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a comma after ea communications be خارج البلاد علي متن يركب be interested in <u>MA KIN</u> cans? ?	 It's difficult to deal with t 	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: - إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London <u>interest in</u> music. ans for the weekend?
 16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board 19- have interest : - Do you have any p 	تعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a comma after ea communications be خارج البلاد علي متن يركب be interested in <u>MAKINO</u> dans	الا's difficult to deal with t to deal with the	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: ا إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London interest in music. ans for the weekend?
 16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board 19- have interest : Do you have any p My plan is to I'm planning to 	يتعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a comma after ea communications be خارج البلاد علي متن يركب be interested in <u>MAKING</u> <u>MAKING</u>	 It's difficult to deal with t 	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London interest in music. ans for the weekend?
 16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board 19- have interest : - Do you have any p - My plan is to - I'm planning to - I promise to 	يتعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a comma after ea د <i>communications be</i> خارج البلاد علي متن be interested in <u>MAKING</u> مصدر 	 It's difficult to deal with t 	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London interest in music. ans for the weekend?
 16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board 19- have interest : Do you have any p My plan is to I'm planning to I promise to I promise to 	بتعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a comma after ea د communications be خارج البلاد علي متن be interested in <u>MAKING</u> مصدر مصدر 	 It's difficult to deal with t 	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: ا إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London interest in music. ans for the weekend?
 16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board 19- have interest : Do you have any p My plan is to	تعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a comma after ea communications be خارج البلاد علي متن يركب be interested in <u>MAKING</u> مصدر مصدر what you are doing thi	 It's difficult to deal with t 	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: ا إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London interest in music. ans for the weekend?
 16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board 18- abroad 18- abroad aboard 19- have interest : - Do you have any p - My plan is to - I promise I will a. A friend asks you I'm plann 	يتعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a communications be خارج البلاد خارج البلاد be interested in <u>MAKING</u> مصدر مصدر what you are doing thi <i>ing to go to the beac</i>	 It's difficult to deal with t 	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: - إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London interest in music. ans for the weekend? heach.
 16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board 19- have interest : Do you have any p My plan is to I'm planning to I promise to I promise to a. A friend asks you <i>I'm plann</i> b. You borrow a CD 	يتعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) is a communications be خارج البلاد خارج البلاد be interested in <u>MAKING</u> مصدر مصدر what you are doing thi <i>ing to go to the beac</i>	 It's difficult to deal with t to the time word or phrase when it لوقت نضع بعدها فاصلـــــة : - She has been living abr She has been living abr She has been living abr The plane crashed, killir We boarded the plane fr We boarded the plane fr Away - He is interested in / has STUCTIONS CPLANS Jack It add Do you have any pla I plan to We' re going to PROMISES I promise that I'll I promise that I'll I promise I won't 	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: - إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London interest in music. ans for the weekend? heach.
 16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board 19- have interest : Do you have any p My plan is to	يتعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) a is a comma after ea a communications be خارج البلاد علي متن ليركب be interested in <u>MAKING</u> مصدر مصدر مصدر MAKING ing to go to the beac from a friend. He / She if your friend is doing r says she would like y	 It's difficult to deal with t It's difficult to different It's different It's	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: ا إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London interest in music. ans for the weekend? ans for the weekend? beach. g it back tomorrow. she is away.
 16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board 19- have interest : Do you have any p My plan is to	يتعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) a is a comma after ea a communications be خارج البلاد علي متن ليركب be interested in <u>MAKING</u> مصدر مصدر مصدر MAKING ing to go to the beac from a friend. He / She if your friend is doing r says she would like y	 It's difficult to deal with t to the time word or phrase when it لوقت نضع بعدها فاصل the word or phrase when it to the to the top of the phase of the pha	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: ا إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London interest in music. ans for the weekend? ans for the weekend? beach. g it back tomorrow. she is away.
 16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board 19- have interest : Do you have any p My plan is to	يتعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) a is a comma after ea a communications be خارج البلاد علي متن ليركب be interested in <u>MAKING</u> مصدر مصدر مصدر MAKING ing to go to the beac from a friend. He / She if your friend is doing r says she would like y	 It's difficult to deal with t It's difficult to different It's different It's	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: ا إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London interest in music. ans for the weekend? ans for the weekend? beach. g it back tomorrow. she is away.
 16- deal with 17- <u>Notice</u> that there <u>Twenty years ago</u> 18- abroad aboard board 19- have interest : Do you have any p My plan is to	يتعامل مع - يعالج (مشكلة) a is a comma after ea a communications be خارج البلاد علي متن ليركب be interested in <u>MAKING</u> مصدر مصدر مصدر MAKING ing to go to the beac from a friend. He / She if your friend is doing r says she would like y	 It's difficult to deal with t It's difficult to different It's different It's	hese people / problem. starts a sentence: ا إذا بدأنا الجملة بعبارة دالة علي ا nt. oad for five years. ng all 158 people aboard. or London interest in music. ans for the weekend? ans for the weekend? beach. g it back tomorrow. she is away.

Hello English



Critical Ihinking								
1. Would you always like to see the person you are talking to on the phone? Why? Why not?								
- Yes, this will enable me to communicate with them well.								
2. In what situations are mobile phones most useful? - When people are in a difficult situation with								
no other means of communicating, for example, while travelling or in an emergency. 3. Are there situations in which people should not use a mobile phone7								
- In many countries there are restrictions on where mobile phones can be used, for example, in								
schools, in parts of trains and buses, in hospitals or on planes. You should never use a mobile phone								
when driving a car.								
4. Do you think that mobile phones will replace all traditional phones? - Sooner or later , they will.								
5. What are the main disadvantages of mobile phones? - They can be very expensive if								
overused; it can be annoying to overhear other people's conversations; batteries may run out at times when it is impossible to recharge them; sometimes you cannot get a signal.								
6. Why do some people prefer to send text messages rather than to make phone calls?								
- Text messages are usually cheaper than calls; they are very quick to send; you don't have to								
get involved in a long conversation with someone; they are quick and easy to reply to.								
7. What are visual communication mobiles ?								
- They will be mobile devices that give us high - quality visual communication .								
 8. How can people send messages by the power of thought? - A special helmet connected to our brain will turn what we are thinking into a digital form which 								
we will then be able to communicate to other people that we know.								
9. Are you with or against new technology?								
- I am with modern technology because it makes our life easier .								
10. What is a social networking site?								
 It is a website where people can write information about themselves and share it with others 11. What is a blog? A blog is a personal website diary for other people to read. 								
12. Are people still using these methods of communications ?								
- Yes they are still used but they are becoming less popular because of new technology.								
13. What are the most common forms of communications today?								
- They are mobile phone calls , text messages and e-mails.								
 14. What are smart phones? They are phones with computers which can connect to the internet and sent e-mails. 								
15. Why is technology not going to stand still ?								
- Because scientists are going to continue inventing new , more complex ways of communicating.								
16. How were communications twenty years ago ?								
- Communications were very different from today. People used telephones, letter and fax.								
17. What did people do to call friends quickly? - They found a telephone to ring others.								
 18. What are faxes ? They are documents sent down a telephone line and printed by special machines . 								
C Grammar X								
<u>FOTMS OF FUTURE</u>								
<u>1-USES OF: WILL</u>								
1- التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية - My mum will be very old in twenty years.								
- She ii be sixteen tomorrow My mum will be very old in twenty years. 2- التثبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة عدم وجود دليل								
- I expect she will get married soon She'll probably leave early today.								
- We don't think they will help us I wonder when you will buy the computer.								
3- اتخاذ قرار سريع بعمل شيء ما								
- The doorbell is ringing. I'll open it.								
- We are very thirsty. We will stop for a drink. - I'll wash the dishes I'll fix the car for you 4								
4- عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة - I'll fix the car for you 4- عند عرض عمل شيء أو تقديم خدمة - 1'll wash the dishes.								
- Will you help me carry this bag, please?								
- I hope you will look after the baby.								
6 - الترتيب لعمل شيء وقت الحديث دون تخطيط مسبق:								
- This matter is very urgent. I and you will meet this evening.								

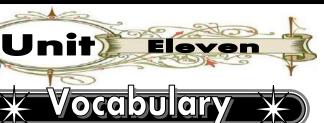
Hello English First Year Second Term - I'll buy you a computer when you pass the final exam. 7 - عمل الوعود والتهديدات - You won't get your prize if you come late. To sum up : We use " will " for decisions taken now 2- BE + GOING TO + INF. - تستخدم هذه الصيغة للتعبير عن نية أو عمل مخطط له قبل لحظة الحديث ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل Intend / intention / plan / have ... in mind / be about to + inf - Omer intends to build a new house. He is going to look for a good place. - A: What are your plans for the next weekend? - B: I'm going to play computer games. - التنبؤ بما قد يحدث مستقبلا في حالة وجود دليل - I think it's going to rain because the sky seems very cloudy. - و تستخدم أيضا للتعبير عما سيحدث في المستقبل إذا كان هناك قرار مسبق ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل: decided / have decided / made a decision / made up ... mind - They are going to go shopping. They have decided. - و تستخدم أيضا للتعبير عن أشياء على وشك الحدوث - Watch out! You are going to fall. We use " going to " for decisions taken before To sum up: زمن المضارع البسيط_ 1- نستخدم المضارع البسيط بدلا من المستقبل مع المواعيد الزمنية الثابتة THE PRESENT SIMPLE TENSE - The train leaves at 6 o'clock. - The final exams take place in next June. - When does the film start ? - It starts at 7.00 p.m tonight 2- ويستخدم كبديل عن المستقبل بعد الروابط الزمنية و (If) الشرطية - After I finish university, I will look for a job. - If I have time tomorrow, I will watch the match. THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE زمن المضارع المستمر (am - is - are + v. + ing) للتعبير عن فعل في المستقبل تم الترتيب له نستخدم المضارع المستمر - I can't meet you tomorrow. I'm seeing the dentist. - I am leaving the office at 11. (I have permission) - We have arranged everything. We are giving a party tomorrow. - We are watching the match on the stadium next Friday. I have arranged everything. Communications Today $UNIT\,10$ (Workbook) 1 Match these words and phrases to the correct definitions. 1 connected to the internet a social networking site 2 a place on the internet where you can go to find out information **b** blog about a company, person, subject, etc. 3 a website where people can write information about themselves and c website share it with other people d online 4 a system that allows people using computers around the world to exchange information 5 a personal website diary for other people to read e internet Choose the correct words to complete the sentences. a I know you like art, but what are your other interests / interesting? **b** My uncle is going to *apply / application* for a job at the hospital. c Many companies pay a lot of money to advertisement I advertise on television. d Ahmed can't do his maths homework because it is very complicate I complicated. 1 Find and correct the mistakes in these sentences. a I think it going to be hot tomorrow. (will be) **b** I promise I going to work hard this year. (.....) c Look at those clouds. Do you think it rains? (....) d When Magda finishes university in two years time, she is 21.) e "Why are you carrying those bags?" "I will go shopping." (.....) 2 Complete with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. a One day, I think wewill live (live) on the moon. b "What's that?" " It's my train ticket. I (take) the train to Luxor this afternoon" c | promise |(*write*) to you every day when I am away. d After ten months of warm weather, scientists say that this year (be) the hottest year ever. 1 Choose the correct words to complete the definitions. a device: a machine or tool used for any / particular purpose

Hello English

signals c high-quality : very good / bad d visual: relating to drawing I seeing or your ability 2 Now complete the sentences with the correct w a The computer is adevice which has chan b I love these photographs that you took, they are very c Is that a new radio? d Waving is a form of communication. 3 Complete these sentences with the correct form a Can you connect this computer to the internet b The boy only speaks Chinese, so he cannot c My is that it will be very hot tomorrow d Over the last few years, there have been some im 4 Match the short forms with the long forms (bot a fax b sat nav	words from Exercise 1. ged our lives. ery m of the words in brackets. et. (connection) with the other children in the class. communications) . (predict) portant in medicine. (develop) h forms are correct). 1 television 2 electronic mail
	3 facsimile
	4 the internet
	5 satellite navigation
1 Match sentences with the answers.	
a What are you planning to do tonight?	1 No, I don't.
b What about your blog?	2 promise won't .
c Don't be late for school tomorrow.	3 I promise I will.
d Do you have any plans for the weekend?	4 I'm going to do that tomorrow.
e You must work hard this year	5 I plan to finish my project.
3 Write what you would say in each of the follow	-
a A friend asks you what you are doing this weekend I'm planning to go to the beach	a. You want to go to the beach.
b You borrow a CD from a friend. He / She says you	must not forget to bring it back tomorrow
c You want to know if your friend is doing anything the	
d Your grandmother says she would like you to phor	
e Your mother asks you to tidy the house. Tell her yo	
CX Iranslati	on_ *)
اع نفقات المعشية	
1- The government does its best to enable the Eq حقول خضراء	gyptian citizen to face the rising cost of living. 2- تبذل الحكومة جهدا عظيما لاستصلاح جزءا من الصحراء وتحويله إلى
	n part of the desert and change it into green fields.
	3- تشجع الحكومة الصناعات المحلية حتى تستطيع أن تستغني عن كثير مر
3- The government encourages local industries s سيطة.	so that we can do without a lot of imports. 4- للتلفزيون تأثير عظيم على الأطفال ولذا يجب أن يزيد ثقافتهم بطريقة ب
4- Television has a great influence on children as	
	5- تسعى الحكومة إلى توفير احتياجات الشعب بكل السبل وهذا يستلزم زياد e with what they need in every way. This requires
the increase of production and birth control.	
A- Translate into Arabic:	
1- Travel helps us to gain knowledge and experie	ence in life.
2- Toshka is done for the welfare of the Egyptian	
3- Many animals have adapted to life in extreme	
4- One of the animals best adapted to heat is Eg	
B- Translate into English:	· · ·
	1- لقد و هب الله مصر كثيرا من المصادر الطبيعية التي لو أحسن است
	
	3- علينا ألا نزعج المرضى أو الطلبة الذين يستذكرون دروسهم وذلك
	 3- علينا ألا نزعج المرضى أو الطلبة الذين يستذكرون دروسهم وذلك 4- لقد أثبت الأطباء أن من لا يدخنون مطلقا يعيشون حياة أطول وأكث
ر صحہ ر	

Hello English

Second Term





			-		
fortunately	لحسن الحظ		مجاور	social life	حياة اجتماعية
unfortunately	-	head teacher	معلم أول		شائع - منتشر
continue	يستمر	advertise	يعلن عن		يسدد ثمن
go on	يستمر	move	يتحــرك	free	مجانــــي
clothe	يكسو	settle	يستقر	miss	يفتقد
feed	يطعم	governess	مربية - حاكمة		بالإضافة إلي
touch	يلمس		مريـــح		إزعاج - عدم راحة
push	يدفـــع	kind to	عطوف علي		إعاقة
naughty	مشاغب	offer	يعرض - عرض		بدنيا
servant	خادم	got on (with)	يتفاهم - ينسجم مع		عقليا
lock (v)	يغلق		يتصل ب	fit	لائق بدنيا
upstairs	في الطابق العلوي		یمــــر بــ	remote	بعيد
downstairs	في الطابق الأسفل	recently	مؤخرا - حديثا		منطقة
silent	صامت	,	جليدي	mix with	يختلط بـــ
silence	صمــت - هدوء		للغايــــة	equipment	معدات
furniture	أثاث منزلي	hoof	حافر	available	متاح - متوفر
opposite	مقابل - عکس	hooves	حوافر	unavailable	غير متاح
miserable	تعس - بائس	enormous	ضخم ۔ هائل		معلم خصوصي
relation	علاقة - قريب	slip	ينزلــق	social skills	مهارات اجتماعية
relations	ذوي القربى	slide	يتزحلق	law	قانىسون
behave	يتصرف	pain	ألــــم	lawful	قانوني
adult	بالغ - راشد	rider	راكـــب	accompany	يصطحب
frightened	خائف - مرعوب	success	النجاح	suppose	يفترض
exhausted	مرهق	surprised	مندهـــش	blood	دم
neighbour	جــار	quite		marriage	الزواج
provide	يمد - يزود	finally	في النهاية	physical	بدني
rule	قاعدة	manage	يتمكن	physically	بدنيا
belong to	ينتمي إلي			mental	عقلي
deserve	يستحق	towards		mentally	عقلياً
punish	يعاقب	horseback	ظهر الخيل	unavailable	متاح
start	بدايــــة	carriage	عربة - حافلة	unavailable	غير متاح
education	تعليــــم	trap	فخ - ينصب فخ	equipment	معدات
delighted	مسرور	cover	يغطي - غطاء	miss	يفتقد - يفوته
noisy	مزعـــج	accidentally	من غَير قصد	family name	اسم العائلة
completely	تمام	method	طريقة - أسلوب		وحيد
	1		1	-	1

Expressions

have no right	ليس له الحق	set off = set out	ينطلق / يبدأ رحلة	
provide for	يقدم - يوفر	walk along	يمشي بطول	
get back	يستــرد	ran past	يجرا مارا ب	
locksbin	يحبس - يحتجز	throw sb to the ground	يطرح أرضا	
get on (with)	ينسجم مع	do sth wrong	يخطأ	
kind to	عطوف علي	receive no reply	لا يتلقي ردا	
have a cold	تنجب طفلا	face to face	وجها لوجــــه	
provide with	يزود	spent money on	ينفق مال علي	
settle down / in	يستقر	climb on to the roof	يصعد علي السطح	

Hello English

Second Term

shout at	يصيح في – يسب	come from a poor family	يأتي من أسرة فقيرة
run towards	يجري تجاه	throwsb to the ground	يطرحه أرضا
call for	يدعو - يستدعي	covered in / with / by	مغطي بـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
		fortune	حظ / ثروة	ظوظ fortunate	
clothe	يکسو ۔ يزود	clothes	ملابس		
ciotile	بملابس	cloth	قماش		
serve	يخدم - يقدم طعام	servant	خادم	servant	خادم
succeed	ينجح	success	النجاح	successful	ناجـــح
marry	يتزوج	marriage	الزواج	married	متزوج
surprise	يفاجئ - يدهش	surprise	مفاجأة	surprised	مندهش
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	تصرف - سلوك		

Definitions

clothe	put clothes on (oneself or someone); dress.	يکسو ۔ يزود بملابس
dislike	not like something	يکرہ
miserable	(of a person) unhappy or uncomfortable.	بائس - تعس
naughty	(especially of children) disobedient; badly behaved.	مشاغب
relation	a person who is connected by blood or marriage.	قريب
right	something one may do or have by law	حـــق
silent	not making or accompanied by any sound.	صامت - ساکن
contact	communication with	اتصال
governess	a woman who lives with a family and teaches children at home	مربيـــة
hoof	the foot of an animal such as a horse	حافـــر
icy	covered in ice	بارد جدا - مغطي بالثلج
settle in	start to feel happy after moving to a new home, etc	يستقر
slip	accidentally slide so that you fall	يتزحلق - ينزلق

Exanguage Notes

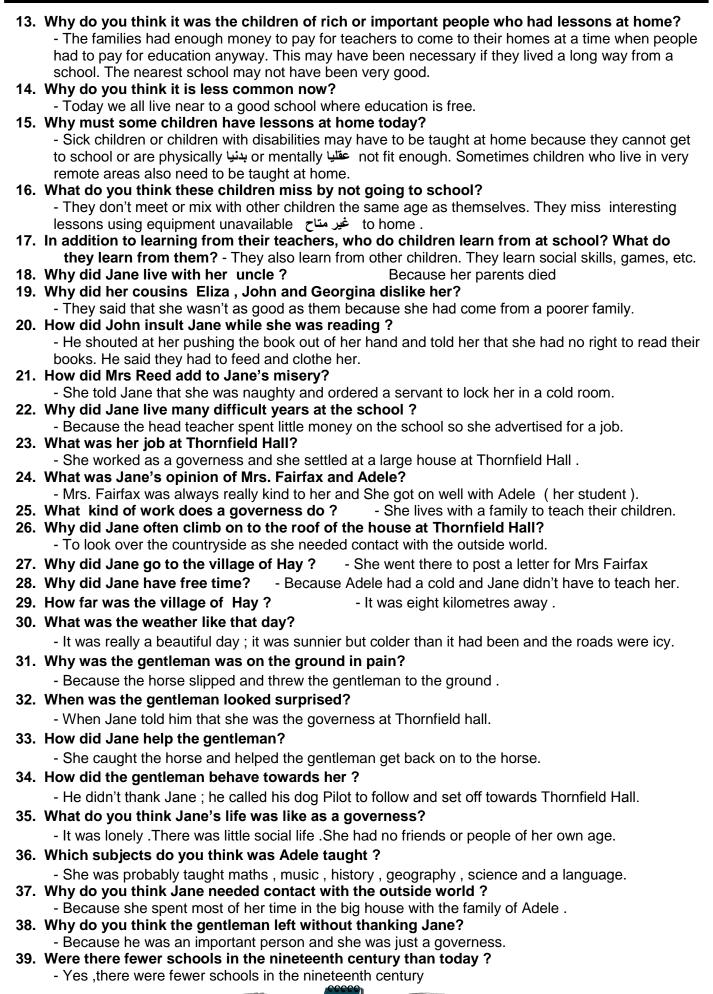
الجمع الشاذ الجمع الشاذ					
Sing	ular	plural	Singi	Singular	
man	رجــل	men	child	طفــــل	children
foot	قـــدم	feet	tooth	سنة	teeth
wolf	ذئــــب	wolves	wife	زوجـــة	wives
half	نصف	halves	loaf	رغيــف	loaves
hoof	حافــــر	hoofs - hooves	roof	سطح	roofs
woman	سيــــدة	women	shelf	رف	shelves
knife	سكينــــة	knives	proof	إثبات - دليل	proofs
2- surprised	مندهش	- Many p	people were surpris	ed when I won t	ne prize.
surprising	مدهش	- The re	sult of the exams w	as surprising.	
3- hard (adj.)	صعب - صلب	His wo - His wo	rk was hard.	- The exam w	as hard.
hard (adv.)	بجد - بغزارة	- It was	raining hard.	- We must stu	ıdy hard.
hardly: (adv.) almost no			ں / بالکاد (تدل علی ال	
	تأتى قبل الفعل الأساسي و غالبا يسبقها can / could و يمكن أن يليها any				
- could hardly	hear her at the	back I've ha	rdly done any scho	ool work this wee	ekend.
4- dislike : hate : detest يكـــره					
5- advertise (سلعة) - We must advertise these goods to increase our sales.					
announce (يعلن (يصرح) - He announced that he would travel abroud.					
	(to do / how to	م do) sth	- I taught he يعد	r to swim / how t	o swim.
	/ how to do)	م sth	- Students le يتعا	earn a lot of subj	ects at school.
learn (to do / how to do) sth يتعلم - Students learn a lot of subjects at school. 7- contactsb ا د يتصل ب (لا تحتاج الي حرف جر) - I contacted him to tell him the news.					
contact with	· ·		l needed c - اتصال ب	ontact with the o	
8- miserable	تعس - بائس		- miserly		بخيل
9- deserve	يحافظ علي preserve - يممموم يستحق 9- deserve				
8					
999 999 999 999 999 999 999 999 999 999 999 999 999 999 999 999 999 9	997 / 1010 / 1010 / 1011 / 1011 / 1010 / 1010 / 1010 / 1010 / 1010 / 1010 / 1010 / 1010 / 1010 / 1010			900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900	900 9000 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900 900

Hello English



reserve : book يحجـز 10- trap غخ - ينصب فخ 11- instead of + (n.) / v.ing بدلا من ذلك جملــــة + instead + جملـــة + 12- kind to : good to يوفع 13- have the right to مصدر مطوف علي 13- have the right to مصدر مصدر 14- feed م يطعم feed on يدفع 15- push ديد الحق - master 15- push علي 16- servant ماك - خادم 16- servant ماك - master 17- What / how (a / an) + ماك - master 17- What a kind man he had been when I first mo 18- make sb + (adj.) يجعل ماك - master 19- lonely وحيد alone معدد ماك - master	 observe : notice رحلــة trip . رحلــة Instead of sleeping, I watched a movie. I didn't sleep. Instead, I watched a movie. I didn't sleep. Instead, I watched a movie. cruel to قاسي علي - cruel to You have no right to read our books in this room. You have no right to read our books in this room. You have no right to read our books in this room. You have no right to read our books in this room. We feed and clothe our children. Elephants feed on plants. pull waiter يجذب - يشد e yauge of the end out the en			
	الموافقة و عدم الموافقة GREEING			
Agreeing	GREEING - LEGICE (LEGIC)			
	أتفق مع هذا o along with that.			
	أتفق مع			
	تماما Exactly أعتقد ذلك .popse so			
Disagreeing				
أعتقد العكس l'd say the opposite.	- I'm not so sure. لست متأكدا			
لا أتفق مع I don't agree (with) -	- That's not always true. هذا ليس صحيح دائما			
لا أعتقد ذلك I don't think so	لا أتفق مع (with المقام - I disagree (with			
- I'm completely against				
Critical Th				
1. Why do children sometimes have to live with	relations who are not their parents?			
- Because their parents have died.	relations who are not then parents?			
2. Do you think it would be easy to live in a hou	use with another family? Why/Why not?			
- I don't think so, Children of other families us	sually cause them much trouble.			
3. Would you like to live in a big house a long v				
	comfortable. / No, There would be little social life			
4. Why did the children think that they were be				
- They had a family and their own home, but				
 5. Why does John say to Jane, "You have no ri - He thinks that everything in the house is the 	-			
6. Do you think Mrs. Reed was right to lock Jar				
	to be punished as she had يستحق			
done nothing wrong.				
7. How do you think Jane became a successful adult after such a sad start to her life?				
- She worked hard and continued to read books. She probably learned that it was important to have				
a good education to be successful				
•	e governess for a young child in a large house in			
the country in nineteenth-century Engla				
9. Which subjects do you think Adele was taug	e had no friends with her or people of her own age.			
 She was probably taught maths, music, history, geography, science and a language. 10. Why do you think she needed contact with the outside world? 				
- Because she spent most of her time in the big house with the family of the child she taught.				
11. Why do you think the gentleman left without thanking Jane?				
- Because he was an important person and she was just a governess				
12. In the nineteenth century, do you think there were more or fewer schools than there are				
today? - There were fewer schools.				

Hello English



Preserve Preserve Preserve Preserve Preserve Preserve At double the work of the police station Second treeve At double the work of the police station Second treeve At double the work of the police station Second treeve At double the work of the police station Second treeve At double the work of the police station Second treeve At a work, I work to the police station Second treeve At work, I work to Alexandine Second treeve Torm: Ind + P.P. Second treeve At work, I work to Alexandine Second treeve At work, I work ago, we live to Londine Second treeve At work, I work ago, we live to Londine Second treeve At work, I work ago, we live to Londine Second treeve At work, I work ago, we live to Londine Second treeve At the doan de the shopping, she stopped at tak to take her home. Second treeve At the doan de the shopping, she stopped at tak to take her home. Second show from the todd me. <th></th>	
THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE Istudied French when I was in secondary school. Agu used to play tennis, when she was young. All found a bag, then he went to the police station. All found a bag, then he went to the police station. All found a bag, then he went to the police station. All found a bag, then he went to the police station. All found a bag, then he went to the police station. Yesterday - ago - last - once - in the pastetc. Last week. I went to Alexandria. THE PAST PERFECT TENSE And studied English before I travelled to New York. Uses: Indicate and the out to the club Indicate and the out the club Attest the past of the past o	First Year Hello English Second Term
 Istudied French when I was in secondary school. عده معن في العاضي في وقت هذه المعني عداد المعنى السفلي على التعيرات الآتية . All found a bag, then he went to the police station	
Aya used to play tennis, when she was young. All found a bag, then he went to the police station. All found a bag, then he went to the police station. All found a bag, then he went to the police station. Yesterday - ago - last - once - in the pastetc. 4 Yesterday - ago - last - once - in the pastetc. 4 Last week, I went to Alexandria. True months ago, we flow to London. <u>TTIFP AST PERFFECT TENSE</u> 1 had cuided English before I travelled to New York. <u>Uses</u> - I had studied English before I went to the club - Mustafa had done all his homework before mininght. - age, inking that a si actio is a bio information of the source of th	الماضي البسيط <u>THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE</u>
Ali found a bag , then he went to the police station. (التية Yesterday - ago - last - once - in the pastetc.) 4 yesterday - ago - last - once - in the pastetc. 4 Last week, I went to Alexandria. 7 Two months ago, we flew to London. 7 The PAST PERFECT TENSE	1- يعبر الماضي البسيط عن حدث انتهى في الماضي في وقت محدد I studied French when I was in secondary school
 4 yesterday - ago - last - once - in the pastetc. 4 Yesterday - ago - last - once - in the pastetc. 4 went to Alexandria. 7 two months ago, we flew to London. <u>TTHE PAST PERFECT TENSE</u> 1 had studied English before I travelled to New York. Uses: 1 had studied English before I travelled to New York. 9 Had cleaned my room before levent to the club auxie at a cie dig did die act is did die auxie and the period of the studied in the period of the studied in the studied program and the shopping. 9 Had cleaned my room before levent to the club auxie and done all his homework before midnight. auxie and the all ready paid the bill. 9 He sold me that they had already paid the bill. 9 He sold me that they had already paid the bill. 9 He sold me that they had already paid the bill. 9 He sold me that had noved to Luxor After / As soon as / When After / As soon as / When After / As soon as / When 9 Had heard the news. 9 Having the pain, she stopped a taxi to take her home. 9 He told me effer hearing the news. 9 Having heard the news by the time he told me. 9 He had heard the news by the time he told me. 9 He had heard the news by the time he told me. 9 He had heard the news. 9 He had heard to take her home. 9 He had heard the news. 9 Hend the assoon as he had done the shopping. 9 Hend the assoon as he had done t	2- يعبر عن عادة في الماضي Aya used to play tennis, when she was young.
 4 yesterday - ago - last - once - in the pastetc. 4 Yesterday - ago - last - once - in the pastetc. 4 went to Alexandria. 7 two months ago, we flew to London. <u>TTHE PAST PERFECT TENSE</u> 1 had studied English before I travelled to New York. Uses: 1 had studied English before I travelled to New York. 9 Had cleaned my room before levent to the club auxie at a cie dig did die act is did die auxie and the period of the studied in the period of the studied in the studied program and the shopping. 9 Had cleaned my room before levent to the club auxie and done all his homework before midnight. auxie and the all ready paid the bill. 9 He sold me that they had already paid the bill. 9 He sold me that they had already paid the bill. 9 He sold me that they had already paid the bill. 9 He sold me that had noved to Luxor After / As soon as / When After / As soon as / When After / As soon as / When 9 Had heard the news. 9 Having the pain, she stopped a taxi to take her home. 9 He told me effer hearing the news. 9 Having heard the news by the time he told me. 9 He had heard the news by the time he told me. 9 He had heard the news by the time he told me. 9 He had heard the news. 9 He had heard to take her home. 9 He had heard the news. 9 Hend the assoon as he had done the shopping. 9 Hend the assoon as he had done t	3- يستخدم لوصف أحداث في سرد قصة Ali found a bag ,then he went to the police station.
 Last week, I went to Alexandria. Two months ago, we flew to London. <u>THIF PAST PERFECT TENSE</u> <u>INTERFECT TENSE</u> Inda studied English before I travelled to New York. <u>Usess</u> I had studied English before I travelled to New York. <u>Usess</u> I had cleaned my room before I went to the club Mustafa had done all his homework before midnight. Atter As soon as / When <u>Advance</u> <u>After As soon as / When</u> <u>Advance</u> <u>After As soon as he had heard the news</u>. <u>After to Ning</u> <u>Advance</u> <u>After As soon as he had heard the news</u>. <u>After to Ning</u> <u>Advance</u> <u>After to Ning</u> <u>Advance</u> <u>Having done</u> the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. <u>Having done</u> the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. <u>Having done</u> the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. <u>Having to p.p.</u> <u>Before she stopped a taxi to take her home.</u> <u>Before she stopped a taxi to take her home</u>. <u>Having the news</u>, he told me. <u>Before she stopped a taxi to take her home</u>. <u>After As soon as When</u> <u>Advance</u> <u>After As soon as When</u> <u>Advance</u> <u>Atter As soon as to taxi to take her home</u>. <u>Before she stopped a taxi to take her home</u>. <u>Before she stopped a taxi to take her home</u>. <u>Maving the p.V. Ning</u> <u>Advance</u> <u>Atter As soon as he head the news</u>. <u>Mater As soon as he head the news</u>. <u>Mater As soon as he head the news</u>. <u>Mater As soon </u>	4 – يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع التعبيرات الآتية
 Two months ago, we flew to London. THTE PAST PERFECT TENSE Individed English before I travelled to New York. Uses: I had stilled English before I travelled to New York. Uses: I had cleaned my room before I went to the club watsafa had done all his homework before midnight. Hustafa had done all his homework before midnight. Hustafa had done all his homework before midnight. He told me that they had already paid the bill. He said that he believed that Ali had moved to Luxor After As soon as / When. After As soon as / When. After she had done the shopping, she stopped a taxit to take her home. He told me <u>after</u> hearing the news. After + n. / ving. After doing the shopping, she stopped a taxit to take her home. He told me <u>after</u> hearing the news. Having the shopping, she stopped a taxit to take her home. Having done the shopping, she stopped a taxit to take her home. Having the shopping, she stopped a taxit to take her home. Having the shopping, she stopped a taxit to take her home. Having the shopping at axit to take her home, she had done the shopping. After / As soon as / When. After / As soon as / behard the news. After / As soon as / When. After / As soon as / When. After / As soon as / When. After / As soon as / behard the news. After / As soon as / behard the news. After / As soon as / behard the news. After / As soon as / behard the news. After / As soon as he head the rhome, she did the shopping. After / As soon as he head the news. After / As soon as he head the news. After / As soon as	Yesterday – ago – last – once – in the pastetc.
THE PAST PERFECT TENSE العاشي التام Form: had + P.P.	- Last week, I went to Alexandria.
 Form: had + P.P	- Two months ago, we flew to London.
 I had studied English before I travelled to New York. Uses: And cleaned my room before I went to the club Mustafa had done all his homework before midnight. Attai bad done all his homework before midnight. Attai bad bad bad bad bad bad bad bad bad bad	الماضي التام
Uses: • had cleaned my room before l went to the club • hustafa had done all his homework before midnight. • Au mustafa had done all his homework before midnight. • Au mustafa had done all his homework before midnight. • At mustafa had done all his homework before midnight. • He told me that they had already paid the bill He said that he believed that All had moved to Luxor <u>After As soon as / When</u>	Form: had + P.P
Uses: • had cleaned my room before l went to the club • hustafa had done all his homework before midnight. • Au mustafa had done all his homework before midnight. • Au mustafa had done all his homework before midnight. • At mustafa had done all his homework before midnight. • He told me that they had already paid the bill He said that he believed that All had moved to Luxor <u>After As soon as / When</u>	- I had studied English before I travelled to New York.
 - I had cleaned my room before I went to the club	•
 Mustafa had done all his homework before midnight. بالمنفي التام عن حدث وقع قدل وقت معن قي الملغي المعن التي ميثار الماضي التام والمعنار المعاري التي في صيفة الغرميان. He told me that they had already paid the bill He said that he believed that Ali had moved to Luxor <u>After As soon as / When</u>	
 - كما يستخدم الماضي التام بلا من الماضي البسيط و المضارع التام في ميفة الغير مياشر. - He told me that they had already paid the bill He said that he believed that Ali had moved to Luxor <u>After</u> As soon as / When	
 He told me that they had already paid the bill He said that he believed that All had moved to Luxor <u>ملحظات عامة على الماضي التام</u> After As soon as / When	
After / As soon as / When, ماضي تام After / As soon as / When, ماضي تام - After she had done the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. - He told me as soon as he had heard the news. After + n. / ving	
 After/ As soon as / When ماضي تام After she had done the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. He told me <u>as soon as</u> he had heard the news. After + n. / v.ing	
 After she had done the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. He told me <u>as soon as</u> he had heard the news. After + n. / v.ing	ملاحظات عامة على الماضي التام
 After she had done the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. He told me <u>as soon as</u> he had heard the news. After + n. / v.ing	ماضي بسيط , ماضي تام After/ As soon as / When
After + n. / v.ing ملفني يسيط - After doing the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. - He told me after hearing the news. Having + p.p. - Having done the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. - Having heard the news, he told me. Before / by the time / When - Before she stopped a taxi to take her home, she had done the shopping. - He had heard the news by the time he told me. Before + n. / v.ing - Before stopping a taxi to take her home, she had done the shopping. - After / As soon as / When	
After + n. / v.ing ملفني يسيط - After doing the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. - He told me after hearing the news. Having + p.p. - Having done the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. - Having heard the news, he told me. Before / by the time / When - Before she stopped a taxi to take her home, she had done the shopping. - He had heard the news by the time he told me. Before + n. / v.ing - Before stopping a taxi to take her home, she had done the shopping. - After / As soon as / When	- He told me as soon as he had heard the news.
 <u>After</u> doing the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. He told me <u>after</u> hearing the news. <u>Having + p.p.</u>	
 He told me <u>after</u> hearing the news. Having + p.p مي المن يسيط المن العالم المنافق المنافق	
 Having + p.p مالطنى يسيط	
 <u>Having done</u> the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. <u>Having heard</u> the news, he told me. <u>Before / by the time / When</u>	
 <u>Having heard</u> the news, he told me. <u>Before / by the time / When</u>	
Before / by the time / When ماضي يسيط ماضي تام - Before she stopped a taxi to take her home, she had done the shopping. = He had heard the news by the time he told me. Before + n. / v.ing - Mefore stopping a taxi to take her home, she had done the shopping. After / As soon as / When - After she did the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. - He told me <u>as soon as</u> he heard the news. - Before she stopped a taxi to take her home, she did the shopping. - When - When I arrived at the station, the train had left. - When - When I arrived at the station, the train left. - When - When I arrived at the station, the train left. - When - When I arrived, the train left. - When - When I arrived, the train left. - When - When I arrived, the train left. - When - When I arrived, the train left. - I didn't go to school till/until I had had my breakfast. - They didn't start the game until I had arrived. - I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. - They didn't start the game until my arrival. - Vedd it's age tave age (ed (away ind) (chaway ind) (
 Before she stopped a taxi to take her home, she had done the shopping. He had heard the news by the time he told me. Before + n. / v.ing	
 = He had heard the news by the time he told me. Before + n. / v.ing	• • • • •
 Before + n. / v.ing, مستمين من المستمين المستميان المستميان المستمي	
 <u>Before</u> stopping a taxi to take her home, she had done the shopping. <u>After</u> / As soon as / When لين يسي المحترفي المحترف	
After / As soon as / When	
 <u>After</u> she did the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home. He told me <u>as soon as</u> he heard the news. <u>Before</u> she stopped a taxi to take her home, she did the shopping. When	
 He told me <u>as soon as</u> he heard the news. <u>Before</u> she stopped a taxi to take her home, she did the shopping. When ماضي بسيط, ماضي بسيط, ماضي باله عنه المالي المال	ماضي بسيط
 <u>Before</u> she stopped a taxi to take her home, she did the shopping. <u>When</u> بي المنبي بسيط, ماضي تام, ماضي تام,	 <u>After</u> she did the shopping, she stopped a taxi to take her home.
 When ، سلمت ماضي تام ,ماضي تام ، الماضي بسيط When I arrived at the station, the train had left. When I had arrived at the station, the train left. On my arrival at the station, the train left. On my arrival at the station, the train left. When I arrived, the train left. I didn't go to school till/until I had had my breakfast. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. They didn't start the game until my arrival. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. They didn't start the game until my arrival. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. They didn't start the game until my arrival. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. They didn't start the game until my arrival. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. They didn't start the game until my arrival. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. They didn't start the game until my arrival. I didn't go to school till, and then he entered the room. 	- He told me <u>as soon as</u> he heard the news.
 When, ماضي تام, ماضي بسيط,ماضي بسيط,ماضي تام b. when,ماضي بسيط,	 <u>Before</u> she stopped a taxi to take her home, she did the shopping.
 When, ماضي تام, ماضي بسيط,ماضي بسيط,ماضي تام b. when,ماضي بسيط,	- When I arrived at the station, the train had left
 On my arrival at the station, the train left. When,, ماضي بسيط,, on my arrival at the station, the train left. When I arrived, the train left. When I arrived, the train left. I didn't go to school till/until I had had my breakfast. I didn't go to school till/until I had had my breakfast. I didn't go to school till/until I had not my breakfast. I didn't go to school till/until I had had my breakfast. I didn't go to school till/until I having my breakfast. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. I having my breakfast. They didn't start the game until my arrival. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. First I switched on the light, and then he entered the room. 	
 When ماضي بسيط,ماضي بسيط,ماضي بسيط,ماضي بسيط,ماضي بسيط When arrived, the train left. I didn't go to school till/until I had had my breakfast. They didn't start the game until I had arrived. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. They didn't start the game until my arrival. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. They didn't start the game until my arrival. I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast. They didn't start the game until my arrival. Ked it has a lit(elee lit(atie lit) lit(atie lit)) (atie lit) elee lit(atie lit) elee lit) First I switched on the light, and then he entered the room. 	
 I didn't go to school till/until I had had my breakfastThey didn't start the game until I had arrived. - I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast They didn't start the game until my arrival. - I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast They didn't start the game until my arrival. - I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast They didn't start the game until my arrival. - I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast They didn't start the game until my arrival. - Verif الاردانية السابقة يأتي الحدث الذي وقع أولا (ماضي تام) والحدث الذي وقع بعده يكون (ماضي بسيط (ماضي المالية) - First I switched on the light, and then he entered the room. 	
ماضي بسيط (منفي غالبا) until , (السم .n.) / (v. ing) - I didn't go to school till/until having my breakfast They didn't start the game until my arrival. - لاحظ انه مع الروابط الزمنية السابقة يأتي الحدث الذي وقع أولا (ماضي تام) والحدث الذي وقع بعده يكون (ماضي بسيط) - First I switched on the light, and then he entered the room.	
- They didn't start the game until my arrival. - لاحظ انه مع الروابط الزمنية السابقة يأتي الحدث الذي وقع أولا (ماضي تام) والحدث الذي وقع بعده يكون (ماضي بسيط) - First I switched on the light, and then he entered the room.	
 لاحظ انه مع الروابط الزمنية السابقة يأتي الحدث الذي وقع أولا (ماضي تام) والحدث الذي وقع بعده يكون (ماضي بسيط) First I switched on the light, and then he entered the room. 	(v. ing) // (اسم n.) (n. استنجاب المنفي عالبا)
 First I switched on the light, and then he entered the room. 	
	 لاحظ انه مع الروابط الزمنية السابقة يأتي الحدث الذي وقع أولا (ماضي تام) والحدث الذي وقع بعده يكون (ماضي بسيط)
: After I had switched on the light, he entered the room.	 First I switched on the light, and then he entered the room.
	: After I had switched on the light, he entered the room.
	00000

Hello English

: He didn't enter the room until / till I had switched on the light.
– يأتي الماضي التام والماضي البسيط مع التعبيرات الآتية ومعناها (لم يكدحتى)
ماضي بسيط Subj. + had + no sooner + P.P than ماضي بسيط
- She had no sooner left than her friends arrived.
ماضي بسيط Subj. + had + hardly + P.P when
- She had hardly left when her friends arrived.
ماضي بسيط when subj. + had + hardly + P.P.
- She had scarcely left when her friends arrived.
-لاحظ عندما تاتي هذه الروابط في اول الجملة فيجب أن يأتي بعدها فعل مســـــاعد:
ماضي بسيط than ماضي بسيط
- No sooner had she left than her friends arrived.
- Hardly had she left when her friends arrived Scarcely had she left when her friends arrived.
UNIT 11 Charlotte Bronte: Jane Eyre (Workbook)
1 Read and put the sentences in the correct order.
a Jane's uncle, Mr. Reed, also dies ()
b Jane's cousin John pushes the book from her hand. ()
c Jane's parents die. () d Mrs. Reed says Jane is naughty. ()
e Jane is reading a book near the window.
f Jane goes to live at Gateshead Hall. ()
g A servant locks Jane in a cold room. ()
2 Match the opposites. a dislike 1 delighted
b miserable 2 like
c silent 3 good
d naughty 4 noisy
3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of these words. clothe dislike lock in miserable relation right silent
a It can be expensive to feed and children if you have a large family.
b It is often completely in the desert at night: you cannot hear anything.
c He does not like the cold and he really
d She has the same family name as me, but she is no e Poor Sara. She has a cold, she's got a pain in her arm and she feels
f All children have the to go to school.
1 Choose the correct form of the verbs.
a Mona was tired this morning because she <i>didn't sleep / hadn't slept</i> well the night before. b Samira's father had been a vet before he <i>became / had become</i> a science teacher.
c Mr Jones <i>learnt I had learnt</i> Arabic after he had been to Egypt on holiday.
d I had always lived I always lived in the country before my family moved to Alexandria.
e Abdul never went I had never been outside Egypt before he went to Rome.
 2 Match to make sentences. a Before I studied the map, 1 it had not rained for months.
b When we sat down for a rest, 2 her cousins had already left
c The ground was very dry because 3 that they had met before
d When Tarek saw Ahmed, he remembered that 4 I had never known that England was so small.
 e Manal arrived home late so 5 we had already walked more than 15 kilometres 3 Complete the sentences with the past simple or past perfect form of these verbs.
arrive be forget leave read speak take
When Abdulin England, he was surprised to find that it was hot. Before he Cairo, he
a lot of books about the country. Also, he to people in his family who had been to
England before. They all him that England was usually rainy and cold! So he a big coat, jumpers and gloves! However, on that first day in London, it
sunny. He to bring his sunglasses, too!
4 Answer the questions.
a What had you done before you came to school this morning?
 b Which unit had you finished before you started this one? c Which school had you been to before you came to this one?
d Where had you lived before you moved to your home?
un an

Hello English

Second Term

1 Rewrite the sentences with words in a When she was young, she had a teache	prackets to give the same n r who lived with her family an	nd taught her at home.
When show	as young , she had a gover	(governess)
b It was hard to walk at the top of the mou	ntain because the rocks were	a covered in ice (icv)
c They have washed the floor, so be caref		
d Hisham did not like his new school at firs		
e She has hurt her leg. She is in discomfor		(pain)
f Some people who live in the mountains h	nave little communication with	the outside world.
		(contact)
2 Rewrite the sentences in the plural.		
a Can you see the child in the car?	Can you see the children	in the cars?
b Please can you pass me that knife?	c They put the pota	ito on the table.
d He has no shoe on his foot.	e Cut the apple into half.	
3 Write a paragraph about people who h		he past
1 Complete these conversations with th		
That's true Exactly	l couldn't agree	I'd go along with that
l'm not	the opposite	I suppose
1 Khaled I think we should all learn two for	breign languages at school.	
NabilI'd go along with that But w		
Khaled I think Spanish and English are the Nabil so sure. I don't think Spa		
Khaled I'd say People sp		ld
Nabil so.		la.
2 Nevine I think it's really important to go t	o university	
Randa		
Nevine People with a degree usually get the		
Randa		
Nevine I think we should both go to univer	sity.	
Randa		
	anslation 🗙	
	كلة النقل العام بالقاهر ة.	 דنفذ الحكومة العديد من المشر وعات لحل مشر
1- The government carries out a lot of p	1	 ۲- تنفذ الحكومة العديد من المشروعات لحل مش m of public transport in Cairo.
1- The government carries out a lot of p	rojects to solve the proble	
	rojects to solve the problem و والازدهار	m of public transport in Cairo.
2- Modern means of transport help trad	rojects to solve the problem و والازدهار. e to grow and flourish.	m of public transport in Cairo.
2- Modern means of transport help trad	rojects to solve the problem و والازدهار. e to grow and flourish. ف بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف
ع 2- Modern means of transport help trad دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام.	rojects to solve the problem و والازدهار. e to grow and flourish. ف بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف
2- Modern means of transport help trad دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs.	rojects to solve the problem و والازدهار. e to grow and flourish. ف بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrie	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف
2- Modern means of transport help trad دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs.	e to grow and flourish. ف والازدهار. ف معزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrie د. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف es. No country can produce all 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. دواهي. 4- We have to learn to live with other. point of the state of thes	e to grow and flourish. م و الازدهار. م بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrie o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع eople. Every individual diffe كن الإنسان من الوصول إلى القمر.	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف es. No country can produce all 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن التعلم كدف تعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تما
2- Modern means of transport help trad دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. هدة نواحي.	rojects to solve the problem و والازدهار. و الازدهار e to grow and flourish. و بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrie o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع eople. Every individual diffe كن الإنسان من الوصول إلى القمر.	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف es. No country can produce all 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن التعلم كدف تعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تما
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. دواهي. 4- We have to learn to live with other. point of the state of thes	rojects to solve the problem و والازدهار. و الازدهار e to grow and flourish. و بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrie o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع eople. Every individual diffe كن الإنسان من الوصول إلى القمر.	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف es. No country can produce all 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن التعلم كدف تعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تما
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. دواحي. 4- We have to learn to live with other. per 5- Science has rendered valuable service 	e to grow and flourish. ف والازدهار. ف معزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrie o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع eople. Every individual diffe كن الإنسان من الوصول إلى القمر. ces to humanity. Man has b	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف es. No country can produce all 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تمك 5- فوen able to reach the moon.
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. per 5- Science has rendered valuable service <u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u> 	e to grow and flourish. ف والازدهار. ف الازدهار الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrie o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع eople. Every individual diffe كن الإنسان من الوصول إلى القمر. ces to humanity. Man has b nowledge. Both the old and	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف es. No country can produce all 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تما 9- فالله been able to reach the moon. 4 the young enjoy watching it.
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. per 5- Science has rendered valuable service <u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u> 1- Television is a means of spreading kit 	e to grow and flourish. و والازدهار. ع والازدهار الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrie o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع eople. Every individual diffe كن الإنسان من الوصول إلى القمر. ces to humanity. Man has b nowledge. Both the old and ces all developing countries	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف es. No country can produce all 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تما 9- فالله been able to reach the moon. 4 the young enjoy watching it.
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. po 5- Science has rendered valuable service <u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u> 1- Television is a means of spreading king 2- Over-population is a problem that factories 	e to grow and flourish. ف والازدهار. ف الازدهار والازدهار ف بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrie o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع eople. Every individual diffe cople. Every individual diffe box الإنسان من الوصول إلى القمر. ces to humanity. Man has b nowledge. Both the old and ces all developing countries are limited.	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 4- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 5- والله able to reach the moon. 4 the young enjoy watching it. 5. It hampers their progress
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. per 5- Science has rendered valuable service <u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u> 1- Television is a means of spreading king 2- Over-population is a problem that face especially when their natural resources 	e to grow and flourish. ف والازدهار. ف الازدهار والازدهار ف بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrie o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع eople. Every individual diffe cople. Every individual diffe box الإنسان من الوصول إلى القمر. ces to humanity. Man has b nowledge. Both the old and ces all developing countries are limited.	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 4- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 5- والله able to reach the moon. 4 the young enjoy watching it. 5. It hampers their progress
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. per 5- Science has rendered valuable service <u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u> 1- Television is a means of spreading km 2- Over-population is a problem that face especially when their natural resources 3- Increasing production and improving 	e to grow and flourish. ال و الازدهار. e to grow and flourish. ال بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrie o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع ceople. Every individual diffe ين الإنسان من الوصول إلى القمر. ces to humanity. Man has b nowledge. Both the old and ces all developing countries are limited. y is quality are the only way	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف es. No country can produce all 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 6- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 7- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. القد تم 8- لقد اله young enjoy watching it. 10- 10- 10- 10- 10- 10- 10- 10- 10- 10-
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. per the food that reads rendered valuable service <u>A-Translate into Arabic:</u> 1- Television is a means of spreading km 2- Over-population is a problem that face especially when their natural resources 3- Increasing production and improving helps to raise the standard of living. 	e to grow and flourish. ال و الازدهار. e to grow and flourish. ال بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrie o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع ceople. Every individual diffe ين الإنسان من الوصول إلى القمر. ces to humanity. Man has b nowledge. Both the old and ces all developing countries are limited. y is quality are the only way	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف es. No country can produce all 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 6- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 7- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. القد تم 8- لقد اله young enjoy watching it. 10- 10- 10- 10- 10- 10- 10- 10- 10- 10-
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. possible service <u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u> 1- Television is a means of spreading kinger 2- Over-population is a problem that fact especially when their natural resources 3- Increasing production and improving helps to raise the standard of living. 4- The Suez Canal is the greatest water 	e to grow and flourish. و والازدهار. e to grow and flourish. الم بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrid o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع ces to humanity. Man has b nowledge. Both the old and ces all developing countries are limited. g is quality are the only way way between East and Wes	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- قي الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 6- لقد أدى العلم خدمات محمل الإنسانية. لقد تم 9- فو معال الما الما الما الما الما الما الما
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. per the food that it needs are not stated to be a state of the food that it needs. 5- Science has rendered valuable service <u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u> 1- Television is a means of spreading king a state of the state of the standard of living. 4- The Suez Canal is the greatest water source of national income. 5- Honesty comes at the top of the salie 	e to grow and flourish. و والازدهار. e to grow and flourish. الم بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrid o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع ces to humanity. Man has b nowledge. Both the old and ces all developing countries are limited. g is quality are the only way way between East and Wes	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- قي الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 6- لقد أدى العلم خدمات محمل الإنسانية. لقد تم 9- فو معال الما الما الما الما الما الما الما
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. per 5- Science has rendered valuable service <u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u> 1- Television is a means of spreading king 2- Over-population is a problem that fact especially when their natural resources 3- Increasing production and improving helps to raise the standard of living. 4- The Suez Canal is the greatest water source of national income. 	e to grow and flourish. و والازدهار. to grow and flourish. الم بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrie o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع ceple. Every individual diffe to humanity. Man has b nowledge. Both the old and ces all developing countries are limited. g is quality are the only way way between East and West ent characteristics of a virtu	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- قي الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 6- لقد أدى العلم خدمات محمل الإنسانية. لقد تم 9- فو معال الما الما الما الما الما الما الما
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. per the food that it needs are not stated to be a state of the food that it needs. 5- Science has rendered valuable service <u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u> 1- Television is a means of spreading king a state of the state of the standard of living. 4- The Suez Canal is the greatest water source of national income. 5- Honesty comes at the top of the salie 	e to grow and flourish. و والازدهار. ف بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى ولا تستطيع solation from other countrie or i كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع or i كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع or i كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع ces to humanity. Man has b nowledge. Both the old and ces all developing countries are limited. J is quality are the only way way between East and Wes ent characteristics of a virtu	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تمك 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تمك 5- فوen able to reach the moon. 4 the young enjoy watching it. 5. It hampers their progress 7 to achieve an income which 5. It has become an important 1000 man. 1- إن العدل الاجتماعي هو الشرط الأساس
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. per the food that it needs are not stated to be a state of the food that it needs. 5- Science has rendered valuable service <u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u> 1- Television is a means of spreading king a state of the state of the standard of living. 4- The Suez Canal is the greatest water source of national income. 5- Honesty comes at the top of the salie 	e to grow and flourish. و والازدهار. E to grow and flourish. E projects to solve the problem of	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- قي الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 5- فوen able to reach the moon. 4 the young enjoy watching it. 5. It hampers their progress 7 to achieve an income which 5. It has become an important 1000s man. 1- إن العدل الاجتماعي هو الشرط الأساس 2- إن الإقلاع عن العادات السيئة يتطلب
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. per the food that it needs are not stated to be a state of the food that it needs. 5- Science has rendered valuable service <u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u> 1- Television is a means of spreading king a state of the state of the standard of living. 4- The Suez Canal is the greatest water source of national income. 5- Honesty comes at the top of the salie 	e to grow and flourish. و والازدهار. E to grow and flourish. E projects to solve the problem of	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 5- فوen able to reach the moon. 4 the young enjoy watching it. 5. It hampers their progress 7 to achieve an income which 5. It has become an important 1000s man. 1- إن العدل الاجتماعي هو الشرط الأساس 2- إن الإقلاع عن العادات السيئة يتطلب 3- من الأفضل أن تخطط لمستقبلك من الأ
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. per the food that it needs are not stated to be a state of the food that it needs. 5- Science has rendered valuable service <u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u> 1- Television is a means of spreading king a state of the state of the standard of living. 4- The Suez Canal is the greatest water source of national income. 5- Honesty comes at the top of the salie 	e to grow and flourish. و والازدهار. ف بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى و لا تستطيع solation from other countrid o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع eople. Every individual diffe solation from other countrid eople. Every individual diffe solator. Man has b nowledge. Both the old and ces all developing countries are limited. J is quality are the only way way between East and Wes ent characteristics of a virtu action for a virtu action for a virtus action for	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- قي الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقة 4- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقة 5- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقة 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 5- فوen able to reach the moon. 4 the young enjoy watching it. 5. It hampers their progress 7 to achieve an income which 5. It has become an important 1000s man. 1- إن العدل الاجتماعي هو الشرط الأساس 2- إن الإقلاع عن العادات السيئة يتطلب 3- الشباب دائما مغرم بالمغامرات.
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. per the food that it needs are not stated to be a state of the food that it needs. 5- Science has rendered valuable service <u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u> 1- Television is a means of spreading king a state of the state of the standard of living. 4- The Suez Canal is the greatest water source of national income. 5- Honesty comes at the top of the salie 	e to grow and flourish. و والازدهار. ف بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى و لا تستطيع solation from other countrid o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع eople. Every individual diffe solation from other countrid eople. Every individual diffe solator. Man has b nowledge. Both the old and ces all developing countries are limited. J is quality are the only way way between East and Wes ent characteristics of a virtu action for a virtu action for a virtus action for	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 3- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقف 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 5- فوen able to reach the moon. 4 the young enjoy watching it. 5. It hampers their progress 7 to achieve an income which 5. It has become an important 1000s man. 1- إن العدل الاجتماعي هو الشرط الأساس 2- إن الإقلاع عن العادات السيئة يتطلب 3- من الأفضل أن تخطط لمستقبلك من الأ
 2- Modern means of transport help trade. دولة أن تنتج كل ما تحتاج إليه من طعام. 3- At present, no country can stand in is the food that it needs. 4- We have to learn to live with other. per the food that it needs are not stated to be a state of the food that it needs. 5- Science has rendered valuable service <u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u> 1- Television is a means of spreading king a state of the state of the standard of living. 4- The Suez Canal is the greatest water source of national income. 5- Honesty comes at the top of the salie 	e to grow and flourish. و والازدهار. ف بمعزل عن الدول الأخرى و لا تستطيع solation from other countrid o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع o. أن كل فرد يختلف عن الآخرين في ع eople. Every individual diffe solation from other countrid eople. Every individual diffe solator. Man has b nowledge. Both the old and ces all developing countries are limited. J is quality are the only way way between East and Wes ent characteristics of a virtu action for a virtu action for a virtus action for	m of public transport in Cairo. 2- تساعد وسائل النقل الحديثة التجارة على النم 3- قي الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقة 4- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقة 5- في الوقت الحاضر لا تستطيع أي دولة أن تقة 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 4- علينا أن نتعلم كيف نعيش مع غيرنا من الناس 5- لقد أدى العلم خدمات قيمة للإنسانية. لقد تم 5- فوen able to reach the moon. 4 the young enjoy watching it. 5. It hampers their progress 7 to achieve an income which 5. It has become an important 1000s man. 1- إن العدل الاجتماعي هو الشرط الأساس 2- إن الإقلاع عن العادات السيئة يتطلب 3- الشباب دائما مغرم بالمغامرات.

Hello English

Second Term





		I			
travel agency	مكتب سفريات	colleague	زمیل (عمل – دراسة)		رضا ــقناعة
e– mail	بريد إلكتروني	customer	زبون 🗕 عميل	satisfy	يشبع - يرضي
request	طئب	apply for	يتقدم بطلب	satisfied	راضی – قانع
note down	يُــدوِّن	practice (n)	ممارسىـــة	satisfactory	مُرضِى - مُقنِع
address	يخاطب - عنوان	practical	عملي – تطبيقي	of my own	ملكــــي
confirm	يۇكــــد	instructions	تعليمات – إرشادات	office skills	مهارات مكتبية
booking	حجـــز	instruct	یرشد ـ یعلم	interpret	يترجم شفوي
culture	ثقافة	contact	يتصل بـ	translate	يترجم تحريري
cultural	ثقافــــي	laboratory (lab)	معمــــل	translator	مترجــــم
sightseeing	مشاهدة المعالم	method of payme	طريقة الدفع ent	translation	ترجمــــة
secretary	سكرتيـــر	journalist	صحفي	side by side	جنبا إلى جنب
training	تدريـــب	journalism	الصحافة	topics	موضوعات
duties	واجبسات	mass media	وسائل الاعلام	excitement	اثارة - متعة
rights	حقـــوق	reasonable	سعر معقول	exciting	مثير ـ مُمتع
continent	قـــارة	skilful	ماهـــر	excited	مُثار - منفعل
train (in)	يدرب علمي	oasis	واحـــة	degree	درجة علمية
certificate	شهادة	uniform	زي موحد	surgery	جراحـــة
typing course	دورة آلة كاتبة	downtown	وسط المدينة (البلد)	surgeon	جـــراح
boss	رئيس العمل	invest	يستثمــــر	airlines	الخطوط الجوية
documents	وثائـــق	investor	مىيىتمىيىر	pilot	طيار
do experiments	يجرى تجارب	investment	استثمــــار	hostess	مضيفة طيران
qualification	مؤهِّـــل	encourage	يشجــــع	attendant	مضيفة طيران
qualified	مؤهَّـــل	foreign	استثمار أجنبي	flight	رحلة جوية
qualify	يۇ ھـــل	waiter	جرســـون	explore	يستكشف
ambitions	طموحـــات	serve food	يقدم طعام	explorer	مستكشف
ambitious	ڂ ؘ٥ؘ٥ؘ٥٥٥٥ مــــــ	restaurant	مطعــــم	exploration	استكشاف
training		fire	حريــــق	dentist	طبيب أسنان
teaching	تدريس	fireman	رجل إطفاء	tooth - teeth	سنة - أسنان
educate	يعلم	on fire	مشتعل	cleaner	عامل نظافة
educator	معلم	set fire to	يشعل النار في	carpenter	نجـــار
education	تعليم	bake	يخبــــز	furniture	أثــــاث
educational	تعليمي	baker	خبــــاز	policeman	رجل شرطة
caller	متصل	bakery	مخبـــــز	thief	لـــــــــــ
educational programmes			برامىية		لـــــــــــ
general seconda	ry education		الشانسوية العمامة	robbery	سرقــــة
			_	-	

Expressions

get up	يستيقظ	be on a flight	يكون على متن رحلة جوية
take a long time	يستغرق وقتا طويلا	make bread	يصنع خبز
get to work	يصل إلى مكان العمل	apprentice for	صبی ل
turn on	یشغل / یدیر (جهاز مثلا)	at the end of	فی نهایة
full of	مملوء ب	near to	قريب من
ready for	جاهز اـ	at weekends	فى العطلات
do a course	یدرس مقرر	work for	يعمل لدى (عند / من أجل)
die in a fire	يموت في الحريق	serve food	يقدم الطعام





Hello English

Second Term

at the age of	فی سن	translate from into	يترجم من إلى
do a job	يقوم بوظيفة	four weeks' holiday	أجازة لمدة 4 أسابيع
do work	يقوم بعمل	work with	يعمل مع
good at + v. + ing	ماهر في	be best at + v. + ing	يكون الأفضل في
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة	be good with people	يحسن معاملة الناس

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
burn	يحرق	burn	حرق	burning burnt	محترق - مشتعل محروق
frighten	يخيف يرعب	fright	خوف / فزع	frightened frightening	مذعور مخيف
injure	يصيب	injury	إصابة	injured	مصاب
mix	يخلط	mixture	خليط	mixed	مخلوط
modernize	يطور/ يحدث	modernization	تطوير / تحديث	modern	مطور / حديث

Definitions

apply	to officially ask to be considered for a job, a place at a collegeetc.	يتقدم
course	a series of lessons about a subject.	برنامج دراسي
improve	to become better or to make something better.	يتحسن / يحسن
qualifications	examinations that you have passed at school or university.	مۇھلات
translate	to change speech or writing from one language to another.	يترجم
design	to draw or plan something well be made, done or built.	يصمم/ يضع تصميم
flight	a journey in a plane or the plane making a particular journey.	رحلة جوية
workshop	building where tools and machines are used to make or repair things.	ورشة
rescue	to save someone from harm or danger.	ينقذ
customer	someone who buys things from a shop or a company.	زبون
temperature	how hot or cold something is.	حرارة

🗶 Language Notes 🗶

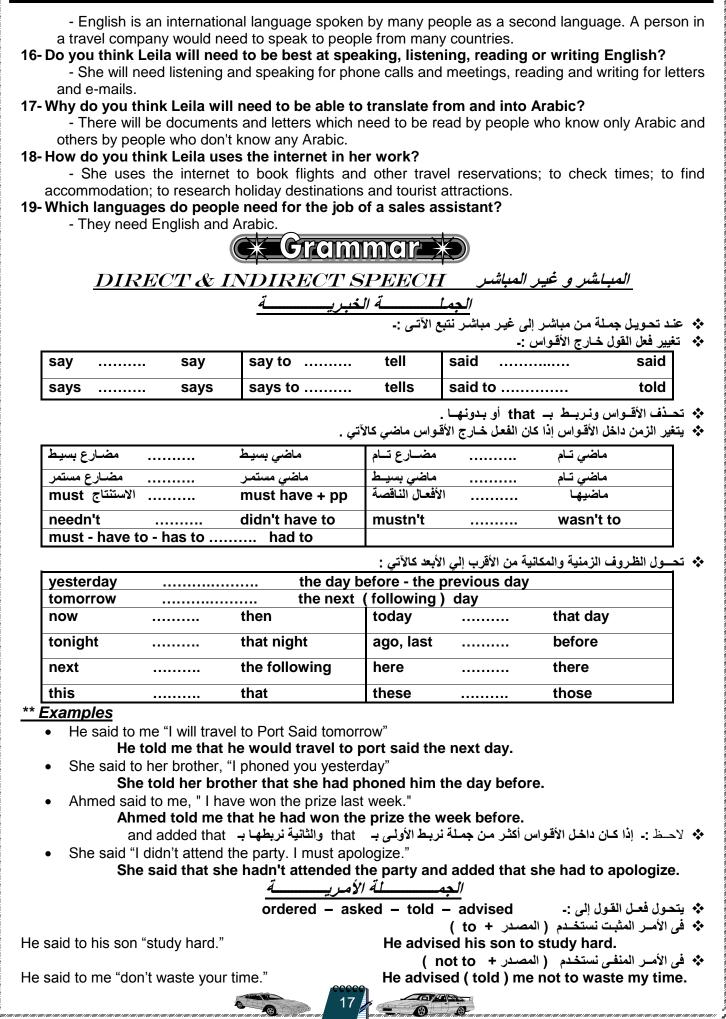
صلب / صعب (تأتى قبل الاسم الموصوف و بعد v. to be) (v. to be) 1- hard: - I'm not very good at maths - I find it quite a hard subject. باجتهاد (تأتى بعد الفعل الأساسى) hard: (adv.) - My brother always works hard at school. بصعوبة / بشق النفس / بالكاد (تدل على النفى) hardly: (adv.) almost no تأتى قبل الفعل الأساسى و غالبا يسبقها can / could و يمكن أن يليها any - I could hardly hear her at the back. - I've hardly done any school work this weekend. 2- apply for: يتقدم بطلب للحصول على (وظيفة) - He applied for the job of an accountant. يقدم طلب إلى (شركة / شخص) - He applied to the court for compensation تعويض apply to: a- busy + v. + ing: مشفول - He's busy doing his homework. 4- **enjoy** + v. + ing: یستمتع ب - I enjoy reading detective stories. 2- finish + v. + ing: ينتهى من - He finished doing the homework. 6- spend + مفعول + v. + ing: - He spent the afternoon playing tennis. 7- eight hours a day 8 ساعات يوميا - five days a week 5 أيام أسبوعيا - four weeks' holiday a year أجازة 4 أسابيع سنويا - two months' holiday a year أجازة شهرين سنويا (how to + inf) أو (how to + inf) يتعلم ۔ يعلم She learns to cook. - She learns how to cook. **know – show** + (how to + inf) - She knows how to cook. يعرف ـ يوضح 9- **work** عمل - مكان العمل (اسم لا يعد) Mr. Ahmed leaves work at two o'clock. I have got a lot of work to do. وظيفة ـ مهنـه (اسم يعد) job I have got a lot of jobs to do. He has got a job as a teacher. الحياة العملية للفرد career He started his career five years ago. profession مهنه (تحتاج إلى مؤهلات وتدريب) Teaching is a profession Job. 10- steal A thief stole my bag. The thief stole my money. يسرق شد

First Year Hello English

Second Term

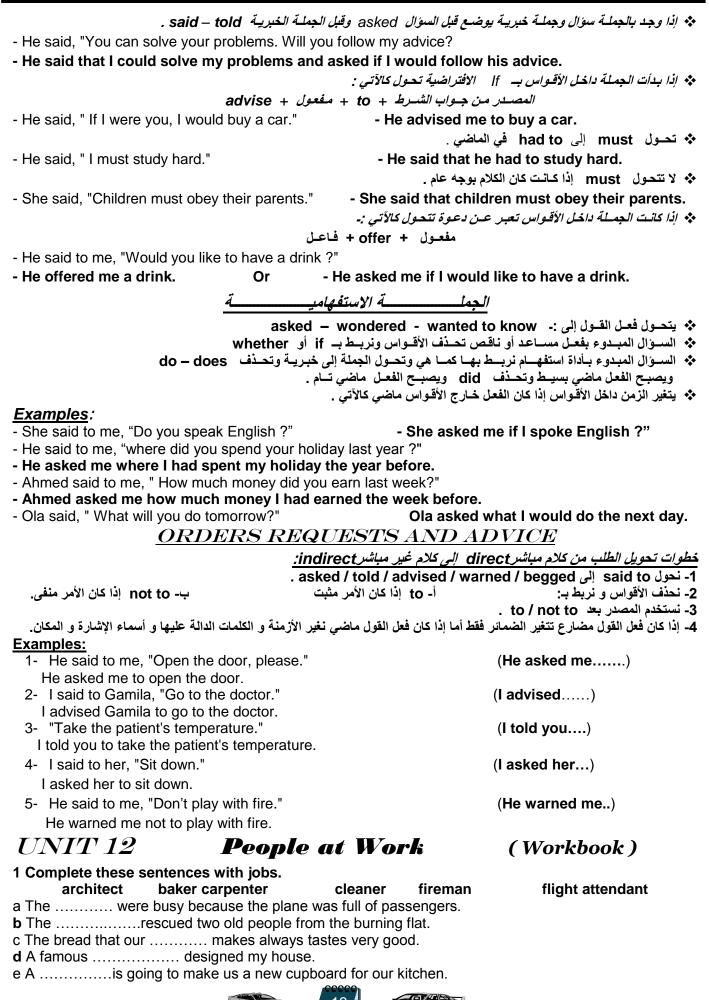
يسرق مكان A gang robbed the bank yesterday. rob rob somebody of something They robbed him of his money. **يء من شخص** 11- interpreter I want to work as an interpreter. مترجم فوري ۔ شفهي translator مترجم نصوص My uncle is a translator; he translates documents, and official paper يتقدم بطلب للحصول على وظيفة She applied for a job as a secretary. 12- apply for apply to يقدم طلب لشركة أو لشخص He applied to three universities and was accepted by all of them. (Make / made / made) يكتشف make a discovery make a decision يقرر make a mistake يخطئ يعمل make a trouble make the bed يرتب السرير make friends يسبب متاعب صداقات يقوم برحلة make a choice يختار make a trip make a suggestion يقترح make a guestion يسأل make a plan يخطط make a promise يوعد يعمل مكالمة make a journey يقوم برحلة make a phone call (do/did/done) يصنع معروفا do research يقوم ببحث علمى do a favour do repairs يقوم بإصلاحات do homework يعمل الواجب do shopping يتسوق do business يقوم بعمل تجارى يعمل دكتوراه يبذل قصارى جهده do PhD do his best do better يتحسن يعد تقرير عن do work يقوم بعمل do a report on do a quiz يقوم بعمل مسابقة do a hobby do exercise do well يؤدى أداء جيدا يقوم بهواية يقوم بتدريب do damage do the housework يقوم بالأعمال المنزلية Critical Thinking 1- What do bakers do? - Bakers make bread and cakes. 2- What do cleaners do? - Cleaners clean the floors and the toilets and empty all the bins. 3- What do firemen do? - Firemen put out fires and rescue people in burning houses. 4- What do flight attendants do? - Flight attendants help passengers on the plane. They get them drinks and serve food. 5- What do carpenters do? - Carpenters make furniture and repair things in people's houses, like doors and windows, stairs and floors. 6- Why did Leila apply for a job in a travel company? - Because she wanted to work for a modern company that works with foreign companies. 7- What qualifications did Leila need to work in a travel company? - She needs to have the Secondary Education Certificate. She needs to speak and write English. What training did Leila do? 8-- She was sent me on a language course to improve her English and to learn to translate Arabic into English and English into Arabic. She was also taught to use the internet. 9- How many hours does Leila work? - She works eight hours a day, six days a week, starting on Saturday and finishing on Thursday. 10- How much holiday does Leila have? - She has three weeks' holiday a year, and she has all the national holidays. 11-What work did Leila do when she started her job? - She spent a week finding out what other people in the company did. 12-What work does Leila do now? - Now she writes letters and e-mails and answers telephone calls from other countries. Sometimes I also translate letters from English into Arabic. 13-Does Leila like her job? - Yes, she enjoys her job. She enjoy meeting and talking to customers from all over the world. 14-Does Leila have to work on 6th October? - No, because it's a public holiday. 15- Why is it important for someone in a travel company to speak English well?

Hello English



First Year	Hello	English	Seco	ond Term
He said tome " Open the door and He ordered me to open the door				
	ä	للاحظ المات عام	4	
- Ali said to Ramy, " The earth is ro	ound."		صل الأقواس إذا كان ما بدا Imy that the earth	is round.
- Rania <u>says</u> , " I will travel to Lond	on."		<i>يضارع.</i> s that she will trav في الحال أو قبل فترة ب	
- He said <u>just now</u> , " No one is all	owed to leav	/e." - He said just no	مي (مصل) (و مبل مسرع ب له ihat no one is a المحالمة الثانية أو الأ	llowed to leave.
- She said, " If I had met him, I wou - She said that if she had - He said, " If I had the money, I wo - He said that if he had tl ول مناسب لمعنى الجملة	l met him, s ould buy a ca	she would have knowr ar."		ن کرچن
- He said, "Can I help you ?"		- He offered to	help me.	المج في جمل العرض .
- He said to me, "Have a nice holic	lay."	- She wished n	ne a nice holiday.	به في جمل التمني
- He said to the servant, "You stole - He said, "Let's swim"	e my wallet."	- He accused t	he servant of stea	 في جمسل الاتهسام ling his wallet. في جمل الاقتراح
- He suggested swimming.		- He suggested	I that they should	• *
 His father said, "If you get high m His father promised to buy him 				ب المن
 The thief said, "I didn't steal the r The thief denied stealing the m 	•	that he had stole	en the money.	••• الاعتذار <u>.</u>
 He said, "I'm sorry I didn't attend She said to me, "Don't make nois She threatened to punish me if 	se or I'll puni	sh you."	or not attending m	•
 He said to his son, "Don't play wi He warned his son against play 	th match or	you'll get burnt	nt.	التحذير .
- He warned his son not to play	with match	-		citt ta i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i
- He said to me, "Thank you very r	nuch."	- He tha	حول فعسل القسول إلى ed nked me very mu yes تحسنف ويتحسول فع	ch.
- He said to me, "yes, I shall go wi	th you."	- He agr	eed to go with me read to go with me n تحذف ويتحول فعا	
 She said to me, "No, I won't obey She refused to obey my orders 	j.	5."		
۔ - I said to my friend, " Would you li - I asked my friend if he would li	ke to go with		ہیرات میں ad Detter	🐝 لا تنقير بغض النغ
- He said to me, "come here."	لِلی there .	اء مسع here التي تتحول He ord -	<i>coı لِئی</i> go <i>لِذا</i> ج ered me to go the	
اة ربط ونستعمل if في الجملة الثانية .	,	م والآخر بفعل مساعد نستعمل أ	والين أحدهما بأداة استفها	
 She said to me, "Where did you go yesterday ? Can you answer this question ?" She asked me where I had gone the day before and if I could answer that question. 				
		18	- 	

Hello English



Hello English

a As soon as he arrives at work, b It takes him a long time to c His shop is full of warm bread d When people are in the office, e Firemen who go to read accidents f Although her job can be very timg, g The old man started his job T the flight attendant enjoys what she does. How the the really enjoys Report Mohamed's answers to the interviewer's questions. Interviewer Can you tell me where you live, Mohamed? Mohamed Yes, I live near to Alexandria Interviewer Can you tell me where you live, Mohamed? Mohamed Yes, I live near to Alexandria Interviewer Can you drive? Mohamed Yes, I must drive for my work. I have my own car. C Interviewer Can you drive? Mohamed Yes, I must drive for my work. I have my own car. C Interviewer Why do you want to change jobs? Mohamed I sometimes work on Saturday mornings. d d. Interviewer Why do you want to change jobs? Mohamed I sometimes work on Saturday mornings. d d Herviewer Why do you want to change jobs? Mohamed I me string my job at the end of this week. I could start next week. g Whot did the people say? a Hussem said he enjoyed being a baker. I enjoy being a baker. I ensel and he enjoyed being a baker. I ensel and he noing being a baker. I ensel and he noing being a baker. I ensel said he that was making special cakes the fol lowing day. d He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussen said he that was making special cakes the fol lowing day. d He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. Listen to check your answers. a Leila applied, a new job last week. b She was interested	f If your tooth hurts, you should go and see a g At the end of the day, thes sweep Match to make sentences.	
b It takes him a long time to 2 it's impossible for the cleaner's to do their jobs of His shop is full of warm bread 3 is making furniture. d When people are in the office, 4 must sometimes cut people from their cars. e Firemen who go to road accidents 5 mix the flour and water. f Athrough her job can be very timg, 6 the baker turns on the ovens. g The old man started his job 7 the flight attendant enjoys what she does. How hat here ally enjoys 8 when he was 13 years old. Report Mohamed's answers to the interviewer's questions. Interviewer Can you tell me where you live, Mohamed? Mohamed Yes, I live near to Alexandria. a Mohamed said that he lived near to Alexandria. Interviewer And what are you doing at the moment? Mohamed Yes, I unust drive for my work. I have my own car. c. Interviewer Do you work at weekends? Mohamed Yes, I must drive for my work. I have my own car. c. Interviewer Why do you want to change jobs? Mohamed I something more interesting. e Mohamed I'm eaving married soon, so I'm saving to buy a flat. f . Interviewer What about money? Mohamed I'm getting married soon, so I'm saving to buy a flat. f . Interviewer When could you start working here? Mohamed I'm leaving my job at the end of this week. I could start next week. g . c Hussein said he enjoyed being a baker. I nerviewer When could you start working here? Mohamed I'm leaving my job at the end of this week. I could start next week. g . c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that his father nad taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that his father nad taught him to make bread. c She would like to work in another country. the future. d She is learning h	a As soon as he arrives at work,	1 by eight o'clock in the morning.
d When people are in the office, e Firemen who go to road accidents f Although her job can be very tiring, g The old man started his job f What he really enjoys b What he really enjoys b What her eally enjoys b What her early our early at the moment? Mohamed Yes, I live near to Alexandria. a Mohamed Yes, I live near to Alexandria Interviewer Can you drive? Mohamed Yes, I must drive for my work. I have my own car. c		2 it's impossible for the cleaners to do their jobs.
d When people are in the office, e Firemen who go to road accidents f Although her job can be very tiring, g The old man started his job f What he really enjoys b What he really enjoys b What her eally enjoys b What her early our early at the moment? Mohamed Yes, I live near to Alexandria. a Mohamed Yes, I live near to Alexandria Interviewer Can you drive? Mohamed Yes, I must drive for my work. I have my own car. c	•	
e Firemen who go to road accidents 5 mix the flour and water. f Although her job can be very tiring, 6 the baker turns on the ovens. g The old man started his job 7 the flight attendant enjoys what she does. h What he really enjoys 8 when he was 13 years old. Report Mohamed's answers to the interviewer's questions. Interviewer Can you tell me where you live, Mohamed? Mohamed Yes, I live near to Alexandria Interviewer And what are you doing at the moment? Mohamed Yes, I must drive for my work. I have my own car. C		
f Although her job can be very tiring, g The old man started his job 7 the flight attendant enjoys what she does. h What he really enjoys 8 when he was 13 years old. Report Mohamed's answers to the interviewer's questions. Interviewer Can you till me where you live, Mohamed? Mohamed Yes, I live near to Alexandria. a Mohamed Yes, I live near to Alexandria. Interviewer And what are you doing at the moment? Mohamed I'm working for a computer repair company. b		
g The old man started his job 7 the flight attendant enjoys what she does. h What he really enjoys 8 when he was 13 years old. Report Mohamed's answers to the interviewer's questions. Interviewer Can you tell me where you live, Mohamed? Mohamed Yes, I live near to Alexandria. a Mohamed said that he lived near to Alexandria Interviewer And what are you doing at the moment? Mohamed I'm working for a computer repair company. b	•	6 the baker turns on the ovens.
ñ What he really enjoys 8 when he was 13 years old. Report Mohamed's answers to the interviewer's questions. Interviewer Can you tell me where you live, Mohamed? Mohamed Ves, I live near to Alexandria. an Mohamed said that he lived near to Alexandria Interviewer Can you dell me where you live, Mohamed? Mohamed Im working for a computer repair company. b	g The old man started his job	7 the flight attendant enjoys what she does.
Interviewer Can you tell me where you live, Mohamed? Mohamed Yes, I live near to Alexandria Interviewer And what are you doing at the moment? Mohamed I'm working for a computer repair company. b	h What he really enjoys	8 when he was 13 years old.
Wohamed Yes, I live near to Alexandria a Mohamed said that he lived near to Alexandria Interviewer And what are you doing at the moment? Mohamed I'm working for a computer repair company. b interviewer Can you drive? Mohamed Yes, I must drive for my work. I have my own car. c interviewer Do you work at weekends? Mohamed I sometimes work on Saturday mornings. d interviewer Why do you want to change jobs? Mohamed I'm queting married soon, so I'm saving to buy a flat. f f interviewer What about money? Mohamed I'm getting married soon, so I'm saving to buy a flat. f f interviewer When could you start working here? Mohamed I'm leaving my job at the end of this week. I could start next week. g What did the people say? a Hussem said he enjoyed being a baker. I enjoy being a baker b He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that one of their ovens had been repaired the month before. e He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. <td>Report Mohamed's answers to the interviewer's</td> <td>questions.</td>	Report Mohamed's answers to the interviewer's	questions.
a Mohamed said that he lived near to Alexandria Interviewer And what are you doing at the moment? Mohamed I'm working for a computer repair company. b Interviewer Can you drive? Mohamed Yes, I must drive for my work. I have my own car. C Interviewer Do you work at weekends? Mohamed I sometimes work on Saturday mornings. d Interviewer Why do you want to change jobs? Mohamed I want to do something more interesting. e Interviewer What about money? Mohamed I'm getting married soon, so I'm saving to buy a flat. f Interviewer What about money? Mohamed I'm getting married soon, so I'm saving to buy a flat. f Interviewer When could you start working here? Mohamed I'm leaving my job at the end of this week. I could start next week. g 2 What did the people say? a Hussem said he enjoyed being a baker. I enjoy being a baker b He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he enjoyed being a bakwer. 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. Listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested	Interviewer Can you tell me where you live, Moham	ned?
Interviewer And what are you doing at the moment? Mohamed I'm working for a computer repair company. b Interviewer Can you drive? Mohamed Yes, I must drive for my work. I have my own car. c Interviewer Do you work at weekends? Mohamed I sometimes work on Saturday mornings. d Interviewer Why do you want to change jobs? Mohamed I want to do something more interesting. e Interviewer What about money? Mohamed I'm getting married soon, so I'm saving to buy a flat. f f Mohamed I'm getting married soon, so I'm saving to buy a flat. f Mohamed I'm leaving my job at the end of this week. I could start next week. g What did the people say? a Hussem said he enjoyed being a baker. I enjoy being a baker b He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that his if ather often helped him to mix the flour and water. i Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. Iisten to check your answers. a Leila appliedfora new job last week. b She was interested	Mohamed Yes, I live near to Alexandria.	
Mohamed I'm working for a computer repair company. b	a Mohamed said that he lived near to Alexandria	
b	Interviewer And what are you doing at the moment	?
Interviewer Can you drive? Mohamed Yes, I must drive for my work. I have my own car. c	Mohamed I'm working for a computer repair compa	ny.
Mohamed Yes, I must drive for my work. I have my own car. c interviewer Do you work at weekends? Mohamed I sometimes work on Saturday mornings. d interviewer Why do you want to change jobs? Mohamed I want to do something more interesting. e interviewer What about money? Mohamed I'm getting married soon, so I'm saving to buy a flat. f f interviewer When could you start working here? Mohamed I'm leaving my job at the end of this week. I could start next week. g What did the people say? a Hussem said he enjoyed being a baker. I lenjoy being a baker b He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that one of their ovens had been repaired the month before. e Moplete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested	b	
c Interviewer Do you work at weekends? Mohamed I sometimes work on Saturday mornings.	Interviewer Can you drive?	
Interviewer Do you work at weekends? Mohamed I sometimes work on Saturday mornings. d	Mohamed Yes, I must drive for my work. I have my	own car.
Mohamed I sometimes work on Saturday mornings. d Interviewer Why do you want to change jobs? Mohamed I want to do something more interesting. e Interviewer What about money? Mohamed I'm getting married soon, so I'm saving to buy a flat. f f Interviewer When could you start working here? Mohamed I'm leaving my job at the end of this week. I could start next week. g 2 What did the people say? a Hussem said he enjoyed being a baker. I enjoy being a baker b He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that one of their ovens had been repaired the month before. e He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested		
 d		
Interviewer Why do you want to change jobs? Mohamed I want to do something more interesting. e		
Mohamed I want to do something more interesting. e Interviewer What about money? Mohamed I'm getting married soon, so I'm saving to buy a flat. f f Interviewer When could you start working here? Mohamed I'm leaving my job at the end of this week. I could start next week. g What did the people say? a Hussem said he enjoyed being a baker. I enjoy being a baker b He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that one of their ovens had been repaired the month before. e He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested	d	
 e		
Interviewer What about money? Mohamed I'm getting married soon, so I'm saving to buy a flat. f	Mohamed I want to do something more interesting.	
Mohamed I'm getting married soon, so I'm saving to buy a flat. f Interviewer When could you start working here? Mohamed I'm leaving my job at the end of this week. I could start next week. g 2 What did the people say? a Hussem said he enjoyed being a baker. Ienjoy being a baker b He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that one of their ovens had been repaired the month before. e He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested		
f		
Interviewer When could you start working here? Mohamed I'm leaving my job at the end of this week. I could start next week. g 2 What did the people say? a Hussem said he enjoyed being a baker. I enjoy being a baker b He said that his father had taught him to make bread. C Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that one of their ovens had been repaired the month before. e He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested		buy a flat.
 Mohamed I'm leaving my job at the end of this week. I could start next week. What did the people say? a Hussem said he enjoyed being a baker. I enjoy being a baker b He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that one of their ovens had been repaired the month before. e He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested		
 g	, 0	
 2 What did the people say? a Hussem said he enjoyed being a baker. <i>I enjoy being a baker</i> b He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that one of their ovens had been repaired the month before. e He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested	• • • •	k. I could start next week.
 a Hussem said he enjoyed being a baker. <i>I enjoy being a baker</i> b He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that one of their ovens had been repaired the month before. e He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested working for a modern company. c She would like to work in another country the future. d She's learning how to translate English Arabic. e She starts work		
 I enjoy being a baker b He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that one of their ovens had been repaired the month before. e He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested working for a modern company. c She would like to work in another country the future. d She's learning how to translate English Arabic. e She starts work		
 b He said that his father had taught him to make bread. c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that one of their ovens had been repaired the month before. e He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested working for a modern company. c She would like to work in another country		
 c Hussein said he that was making special cakes the f ol lowing day. d He said that one of their ovens had been repaired the month before. e He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested working for a modern company. c She would like to work in another country the future. d She's learning how to translate English Arabic. e She starts work Saturday morning. f She answers telephone calls		ad
 d He said that one of their ovens had been repaired the month before. e He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested working for a modern company. c She would like to work in another country the future. d She's learning how to translate English Arabic. e She starts work Saturday morning. f She answers telephone callsother countries. g She likes the people she works		au.
 e He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested working for a modern company. c She would like to work in another country the future. d She's learning how to translate English Arabic. e She starts work	c Hussein said he that was making special cakes th	e f ol lowing day.
 e He said that his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water. 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested working for a modern company. c She would like to work in another country the future. d She's learning how to translate English Arabic. e She starts work	d He said that one of their ovens had been repaired	the month before
 1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions. listen to check your answers. a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested working for a modern company. c She would like to work in another country the future. d She's learning how to translate English Arabic. e She starts work Saturday morning. f She answers telephone callsother countries. g She likes the people she works	u ne salu that one of their ovens had been repaired	
 a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested	e He said that his wife and children often helped hin	n to mix the flour and water.
 a Leila appliedfor a new job last week. b She was interested	1 Complete the sentences with the correct prepo	sitions, listen to check your answers.
 b She was interested working for a modern company. c She would like to work in another country the future. d She's learning how to translate English Arabic. e She starts work Saturday morning. f She answers telephone callsother countries. g She likes the people she works		
 c She would like to work in another country the future. d She's learning how to translate English Arabic. e She starts work Saturday morning. f She answers telephone callsother countries. g She likes the people she works		odern company
 d She's learning how to translate English Arabic. e She starts work Saturday morning. f She answers telephone callsother countries. g She likes the people she works		
 e She starts work		
 f She answers telephone callsother countries. g She likes the people she works		
 g She likes the people she works		countries
 2 Write a time phrase for each of the words in bold. a That hotel is open from April to October. The hotel is open for seven month a year. b I'm at school from 8 o'clock until 2 o'clock every day. 		
 a That hotel is open from April to October. The hotel is open for seven month a year. b I'm at school from 8 o'clock until 2 o'clock every day. 		
The hotel is open for seven month a year. b I'm at school from 8 o'clock until 2 o'clock every day.	•	
b I'm at school from 8 o'clock until 2 o'clock every day.	• •	
• •		/ day.
	-	•
		×~.
		k an an a

Hello English

Second Term

 c Every day, we have five lessons. d My grandfather only works on Tuesdays and Wednesdays My grandfather e Every year, my father has four weeks' holiday. My father					
1 A is s	someone who visits another co	ountry on holiday.			
a customer	b tourist	c sales assistant	d student		
2 A is a	a person who buys things in a	shop.			
a customer	b farmer	c sales assistant	d translator		
3 A is a	a learner at school or university	y.			
a scientist	b tourist	c foreigner	d student		
4 A hel	ps swimmers who are in dang	er at the beach or a swimming	j pool.		
a baker	b life guard	c attendant	d dentist		
5 A is a person who serves in a shop.					
a customer	b waiter	c sales assistant	d flight attendant		
6 To is to change from one language into another.					
a inspect	b attend	c communicate	d translate		
1 Complete this description of Ed Fawley's job.					

Ed Fawley is twenty-seven years a)...... He's from Vancouver in Canada, but at the moment he's working as a teacher in a b)..... in Alexandria. He teaches English to Egyptian students. He works very hard. He often teaches thirty-six hours c)..... week and spends a lot of time preparing lessons. However, he has two months' holiday a year and all the Egyptian national holidays. Ed first came to Alexandria d)......he wanted to learn Arabic and live in a historic city. He like his job, enjoys Egyptian life, has many good friend here and loves travelling in the Middle East. In the future, he would like to to Cairo and open a language school there.

1- الانفجار السكاني مشكلة تواجه الدول النامية وهي تعوق تقدمها حاضرها تكون مواردها الطبيعية محدودة.

- Over-population is a problem that faces all developing countries. It hampers their progress especially when their natural resources are limited.

2- إن زيادة الإنتاج وتحسين نوعيته هما الطريق لتحقيق دخل يساعد على رفع مستوى المعيشة. - Increasing production and improving its quality are the only way to achieve an income which helps to raise the standard of living.

> 3- تعتبر قناة السويس أعظم ممر مائي بين الشرق والغرب، ولقد أصبحت مصدرا هاما للدخل القومي. s the greatest water way between East and West It has become an important

- The Suez Canal is the greatest water way between East and West. It has become an important source of national income.

4- تأتى الأمانة في قمة الصفات البارزة لأخلاق الإنسان الفاضل.

Honesty comes at the top of the salient characteristics of a virtuous man.

5- تمكننا المخترعات الحديثة من أن نحيا حياة أفضل وأكثر راحة.

- Modern inventions enable us to lead a better and more comfortable life.

A- Translate into Arabic:

- 1- Money is the source of all evil. It encourages some young men to do bad habits. Moreover, it urges some people to commit crimes such as theft, violence, forgery and murder.
- 2- It is impossible to talk of (about) creating the modern Egyptian nation without first creating the modern Egyptian village. It will provide the farmer with good housing, electricity and health services.

B- Translate into English:

1- يجب أن تأخذ قسطا من الراحة لكي تجدد نشاطك وتكون قادرا على الإنتاج.

2- الصحبة الجيدة تقي الفرد ضد الانحراف.

3- علينا جميعا مساعده اليتامي والفقراع.

- 4- إن الإقلاع عن العادات السيئة يتطلب عزيمة قوية.
- 5- إن العدل الاجتماعي هو الشرط الأساسي للسلام والاستقرار لأي مجتمع.

Hello English

Second Term





					I
colleague	زمیل عمل	فامسات materials		homeless	متشرد
practise	يمــارس	manual labour	عمل يدوي	homelessness	التشرد
brilliant	رائع - ذکي	informal	غير رسمي	profession	مهنـــة
comment	يعلق - تعليق	illegal	غير شرعي	physical work	عمل يدوي
character	شخصية	resident	ساکن ۔ قاطن	substance	مــادة
slums	أحياء فقيرة	improve	يحسن	apartment	شق_ة
shantytowns	أحياء فقيرة	hide	يخفي	remove	يسزيل
common	شـــائع	penname	اسم مستعار	treat	يتعامل مع - يعالج
shacks	أكسواخ	edge	حاف_ة	wastes	نفايات
housing	الإسكان	مــــأوي shelters		temporary	مؤقــت
English-speaking countries		جليزية	دول ناطقة باللغة الأن	protection	حماية - وقاية

Definitions

housing	houses for people to live in	الإسكان
illegal	not allowed by law	غير شرعي
manual labour	work using your hands, especially doing hard physical work	عمل يدوي
material	a substance such as wood, plastic, paper, etc. from which things can be made	خامـــة
resident	someone who lives in a house, apartment, area, etc.	ساکن ۔ قاطن
sanitation	the protection of public health by removing and treating wastes, dirty water etc.	النظافة العامة
shack	a small building that has not been very well built	کــوخ
shantytown	an area of badly built temporary buildings where very poor people live	حــي فقير

🖌 Critical Thinking 💥

- 1. How many brothers and sisters did Charlotte have?
- 2. How old was Charlote among her brothers and sisters?
- 3. What did Charlotte do in 1843?
- 4. Who were Elizabeth and Branwell?
- Elizabeth was Charlote's aunt and Branwell was Charlote's brother.
- 5. In what ways were Charlotte and Jane Eyre the same?
 - They were both strong, clever women.
- 6. Why did Charlotte and her sisters write under pen names?To hide the fact that they were women.
- 7. Why did Charlotte and her sisters hide the fact that they were women on writing a collection of poems?

- Because at that time in England, people thought women should not write books and did not take their work seriously.

8. What was Charlotte Bronte most successful book? It was Jane Eyre.

9. What is a slum?

- A slum may be an overcrowded shantytown on the edge of a large city where poor people live.
- 10. Which city is used as an example of a slum where there is a lot of crime?
 - Rio de Janeiro in Brazil.
- 11. What kinds of jobs do people who live in slums do?

- She had five.
- She was the third of six children.
- She returned to England.

Hello English

Second Term

- Selling things in the	street or manual labour.						
• •	slum residents do inforn	nal or illegal jobs?					
- Because they are homeless and have no profession.							
•	13. How many people may be living in slums by the year 2030? - The number could be two billion.						
	ents solve the problems						
-	od shelters and finding the						
	s residents affect society	•					
	-	ess. Most of them could be crir	ninals and thieves.				
•		IEW D					
1 Finish the following							
1 Finish the following		0					
,							
	end7 Yes, I plan to go to th						
-							
	museum? That will be inte	•					
	nce museum is better that						
-	o the science museum with						
-	d say in each of the follo	wing situations:					
a You borrow a book fro							
-	umbrella to school becaus	se it is raining. Your father tells	s you not to forget to				
bring it home							
c Your friend thinks that							
-	arrying a heavy bag. You	want to help her.					
	inswer from a, b, c or d:	<i>.</i>					
		for a job at a bank.					
11,5	advertise	c judge	d graduate				
		this device to a computer.	•				
	put	c connect	d compliment				
	lly flies.		• ••				
	no like	c dislike	d like not				
-		e careful you do not					
•	settle	c sleep	d drive				
	ot continue playing becaus						
	injured	c bright	d complicated				
6 To cook the bread, pu							
U	heater	c stove	d oven				
	a Jacket for her new job a		• /				
	is going to	c is going	d to				
-	bbigger in the		• • •				
	is going to be	c will be	d go1ng o be				
	uxor before she moved to						
U	has lived	c had lived	c was lived				
•	neir hotel after they had an						
	had taken	c had took	d took				
	ange juice h						
	be	c was	d been				
	she could help me w	•					
a whether b	weather	c that	d for				

-

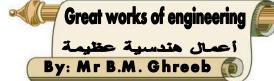
First Year	Hello Er	Iglish	Second Term
4 Rewrite the following set	ntences using the wa	ord(s) in brackets, to	give the same meaning.
1 Samir didn't go to the club	-		(By the time)
2 During my stay in Hurghad			(while)
3 " You must revise well for	•		(told)
4 I will attend the conference			(going)
5 Find and correct the mis	•	a sontoncos:	(going)
1 They asked her if she knew		-	
2 They sa id that they wante			
3 She told them that she cou			toro
4 I am taking English lesson	•	•	
C) Read the following pase			
C) Read the following pass	•	y uncle	
Before my uncle became		•	ant at a shop in London. That's
•	-		ht attendant. He said that it was
very tiring, so he took a cour		-	
	-		a blog about what he does every
		-	at can tell them about the places
		-	he does not worry. He said that if
he wasn't a tour guide, he w	• •		-
1 Where did the uncle learn		the company that mad	le digital devices for tourists
2 Which job did he find tiring			
3 Why do you think the uncl		verv dav?	
4 What does he think tourist	•	• •	
5 In the future, who or what	Ũ		ev are visiting?
a tour guides	b flight attendants	c digital devices	d nothing will help them
6 Why is the uncle not worright	•		
a Because he can't do the jo	•	b Because he thinks	he will get another job.
c Because it makes him mis	,	d Because it's very ti	c ,
7 Answer only FOUR (4) of		•	inng.
a Why did Jane Eyre often c	• •		
b Why did Jane walk to the			
c What happened to the gen	• •	42	
	•		he governess at Thornfield Hall?
e Why do you think it was di			
f Why do you think the gentl			k on his horse?
8 Answer the following qu			
• •		nation?" Mrs. Bumble	e suggested. Monks put a bag
of coins on the table in fro	•		55
what happened on the nig	ht that Nurse Sally d	ied.	
a What is the information that	•		
b How does she know this ir			
c What kind of person is Mrs	. Bumble/ How do we	know this?	
9 Write a paragraph of nin			
a a job you would like to do.	-	., .	
b types of communication in	the future		
10 Translate into Arabic:			
1 He's going to send a mess	age to a friend.		
2 After the baker has finishe	•	akes cakes.	
b Translate into English:	-		
-			لم أرك منذ بداية الدراسة.

Hello English

Second Term

No





مقدم برامج	amount	-	plan	خطة
-	•	•	foreign	اجنبي
•		بدلا من	central	مركزي
		جبال	several	عديد
عملية	Mount Everest	قمة جبل افرست	arrange	يرتب
مستوي البحر	climbers	-	group	مجموعة
معدل - متوسط	breathe	يتنفس	adviser	مستشار
يقيس	earthquake		background	خلفية
ارتفاع - مرتفع	damage		employ	يوظف
	lighthouse	-	employee	موظف
أرض متجمدة	link	يربط	charity	إحسان
تحت الصفر	shorten	يقصر	remove	يزيل
	viaduct	جسير	honest	أمين
الهندسة	operate	يشغــل	opinion	رأي
خبير	right	حـــق	exam	امتحان
نبذل قصارى جهدنا	effect	تأثير	nervous	عصبي
متصــل	affect	يؤثر علي	grown	يزرع ـ ينمو
تماما - بالضبط	opening	افتتاح	рау	يدفع
نقط_ة	move	ينقل - يحرك	divide into	يقسم الي
مرتفعات	sail around	يبحر حول	spices	توابل
مسافر - راکب	waterway	مجري مائي	otherwise	وإلا
إمداد - مخزون	directions	اتجاهات	lengthy	طويل
مدهش	passing places	أماكن مرور	cargo	حمولة - شحنة
رئيسىي - أساسىي	authority	هيئة - سلطة	perish	يفسد - يتعفن
دائم	charge	يطلب ثمنا	perishable	قابل للفساد
بشكل دائم	income	دخــل	massive,	ضخـــم
يتضمن	section	قسم - تفريعة	warn	يحذر
نفق	take over	يتولي مسئولية	protect	يحمي
کوبري	highlight	يلقي الضوء علي	invaders	يح <i>مي</i> غزاة
لا يصدق - مدهش	nearly	تقريباً	flood	فيضان
إجمالي - تماما	immediately	فورا - في الحال	source	مصدر
محطـــة	change	يغير - تغيّير	hydroelectric	كهرومائي
خصوصا	particular			طاقة
خاص - مميز	manage : run	يشغل - يدير	trade	تجارة
	مستوي عملية عملية معدل - متوسط معدل - متوسط ارتفاع - مرتفع أرض متجمدة أرض متجمدة تحت الصفر الهندسة خط سكة حديد تحت الصفر الهندسة تحم سكة حديد تندل قصارى جهدنا ننبذل قصارى جهدنا مرتفعات مرتفعات امداط - راكب مرتفعات مدهش رئيسي - أساسي المداد - مخزون المداد - مخزون المداد - مخزون المداد - مخزون المداد - مخزون المدا م	regular timesدولة - حالةدولة - حالةدولة - حالةmountainsمستويمستوي البحرمعدل - متوسطمعدل - متوسلمعدل - معدل - مع	 أوقات منتظمة iregular times ولة - حالة بدلا من mountains ولة - حالة بدل افرست mountains مستوي مستوي البحر ممتعل قمة جبل افرست Mount Everest معلية ممتعل قمة جبل افرست Climbers مستوي البحر ممتعل و البحر ممتعل و البحر ممتو البحر ممتو البحر ممتو البحر ممتو البحر ممتو البحر معل - متوسط معلان منارة and a معل - متوسط معلية منارة and a معل - متوسط معلية منارة and and a معل - متوسط معلية منارة and and a معل - متوسط معلية منارة and and a and - معلية منارة and and a and a	أوقات منتظمةمرحليةأوقات منتظمةregular timesأرد اللهأول الحريةrather thanمرحليةأول الحريةmountainsاللهأول الحريةmount Everestمستويأول الحريةMount Everestمستويأول الحريةartheمستويأول الحريةarthu adviserأول الحر

Expressions

above sea level	فوق مستوي البحر	a day trip	رحلـــة ليم واحد
below sea level	تحت مستوي البحر	tidal power	طاقة المد و الجزر
Passing places	أماكن عبور / مرور	the whole world	العالم بأسبرة
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	in all : altogether	إجمــــالا
do well	يؤدي أداء جيدا	at all	علي الإطلاق
do badly	يؤدي أداء سيئا	pass through	يمر من خلال
give the right to	يعطي الحق لــــ	in general	بصفة عامة
protectfrom	يحميمن	in particular	بصفة خاصة





Hello English

Second Term

Definitions

stages	states or levels that someone or something reaches in a process	مراحل
sea level	the average level of the sea, used as a standard for measuring the height of an area of land	مستوي البحر
frozen ground	ground that is hard because the temperature is below zero. It has become hard like ice.	أرض متجمدة
affect	to cause a change in someone or something	يؤثر علي
charge	to ask someone to pay a particular amount of money for something	يطلب ثمنا
operate	to manage and control a business	يشغــل
section	one of the parts that an object, group, place, etc. is divided into	قسم - تفريعة
supply	an amount of something that can be used.	إمداد - مخزون
permanently	for all future time	بشكل دائم

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
affect	يؤثر علي	effect	تأثيــر	effective	مؤثر - فعال
open	يفتح	opening	افتتاح	open / opened	مفتوح
		distance		distant	
direct		direction			
highlight	يلقي الضوء علي	highlight	أهم جزء		
continue		continue		continuous	
		skill	مهارة	skilful	ماهـــر
1. The phrased work of Take)					

<u>1- The phrasal</u>	<u>verb : (Take)</u>				
take off	يخلع - تقلع	take part	يشارك	take away	يأخذ بعيداً
take after	يشبه	take place	يحدث	take care of	يعتني ب
take to	يعتاد عي	take in	يمتص – يخدع	take in	يستوعب - يخدع
take on		take up	يشغل حيز	take out of	يخرج من
take care of	ىتنى ب	ي	- You must take care	of (look after) our hea	lth.
take over	يتولي مسئولية		- Who takes over your	family when your fath	er travels ?
2- below zero	= sub zero		- Some people work ir	n temperatures which a	are below zero
3- work	عمل (لا تجمع)		- We don't go to work	on Friday.	
works	عمال فنية وهندسية	- İ	- I've read all the work	s of Nageeb Mahfouz.	
				لا تجمع إذا كانت مسبوقة باسم	4- الأرقام الآتيـــة
	hundr	ed , the	ousand , millio	n , billion	
- <u>Million</u>	<u>is</u> of people use t	he Cairo Me	etro every day.		
			Cairo Metro every day	/.	
فـــة + How -5	ــــم What + ص				
	- How old :V			much : What price	
	- How high : \	•		deep : What depth	
- How	I high is this mou		=	What height is this mo	untain?
	و الاسم			لإفعال من هذه الصفات أو الأس	6- لاحظ أننا نكون ا
wide		واستع			يوسع
length			lengthen		يطول
deep		-	deepen		يُعمق
strength			strengthen		يطيـــل
short		• •	shorten		يقصر
			e sea journey from the		
7- affect	يؤثر علي		 Smoking affects you 	-	
effect	تاثير		 Smoking has a bad e 	5	
•	: responsible for			arge of the department	
9- BCE : before			BC : before Christ		قبل الميلاد
	anal was built in a				
AD : Anno	Domini	الميلاد	- October war	took place in AD 1973.	
			00000		
			26		

Hello English

 10- amount : quantity 11- stay in (مدينة) 11- stay at (مدينة) 12- around : about : roughly 13- altogether إجمالول المعالية 14- engineering (n.) 14- engineering (adj.) هندسول المحكمية 15- company مركة يصطحب يصمية 	 Supply is an amount of something that can be used. We stayed in Cairo for two weeks. They stayed at the hotel for three nights. I will stay with my uncle's family in the summer. The first canal was built in around 1300 BCE. Altogether, there are 45 stations in the China to Tibet railway. He put his books all together in this drawer. My sister studies engineering at Cairo university. The High dam is a great engineering project in Upper Egypt. Which company was given the right to operate the canal ? The two sisters had to accompany us to New York
1. Why do so many ships travel betw	ween Europe and Asia?
	en the east and the west in spices, tea, fruit, oil, etc.
- Ships would otherwise have to	en the journey between these two parts of the world? go round the whole of Africa, a dangerous and lengthy journey : طريق رأس . This was even more important if the cargo being carried gerous (e.g. oil).
3. What kind of things do you think	
- Many things such as machines,	toys, cars, computers, fridges, TVs, food and drink.
4. Can you think of any other great	
Millau ، قناة بنما Panama Canal -	
5. Are there any new great works of	engineering that are needed today? ods, earthquakes, waves أمواج , tsunamis
6. Can you think of great works of e	ngineering that were not needed? Why do you think they were urj Khalifa, and many other very tall buildings which are built to give
7. What do you think makes a great	
• •	قيادة leadership , إصرار persistence , مهارة فنية technical skill , خيال .
8. Why was the Suez Canal built ?	
- The Suez Canal was built to sho 9. What does The Suez Canal link ?	orten the sea journey from the west to the east.
- The Sues Canal links the Medit	orrangen See and the Red See
10. Which company was given the r	
	was given the right to operate the canal for 99 years.
•	diately affected by the opening of the canal?
- Things were moved by ship mu	
	pass through the canal? - Between 11 to 16 hours.
13. Who started to think of building	
- A French engineer called Ferdir	
	nent start working on the new canal? - In 1858.
15. How long is the canal? 16. When was the canal opened?	 164 kilometres long. It was opened in 1869 .
	the distance between the east and the west?
	a was shortened by 9.500 kilometres and by 20 days.
18. When did Egypt take over the ca - Since 1956 , the canal has been	anal? n operated by the Suez Canal Authority.
19. Why is the canal important for E	
 Because the ships are charged 20. Why was a new 35-kilometre see 	to use the waterway .This money is important income for Egypt.
- To help modern ships which are	•
21. What were other great engineeri	
••	of China , the lighthouse , The High Dam and Eiffel Tower.
22. When was the first canal built?	- It was built in around 1300 BCE .
23. Why didn't it continue to work a	
- Decause it wash t taken calle of	and it wasn't used after the eighth century.

First Year Hello Eng	lish Second Term					
 24. How many ships use the canal every day? 25. Where can ships travel in both directions? - In passing places. 						
<u>ASKING FOR AD</u>	طلب النصيحــــة					
- What's your advice?	ما هي نصيحتـــك؟					
- Can I ask your advice about?	هل لي أن أطلب نصيحتك بشأن؟					
- What do you think that I should do about?	ماذا تعتقد أنه يجب علي أن أفعل بشأن؟ ترزيت – ما ناباً					
 How would you suggest that we? How do you think that we should? 	كيف تقترح علينا أن؟ كيف تعتقد أنه يجب علينا أن؟					
- Could you give us some advice?	هل من الممكن أن تعطينا بعض النصائح؟					
<u>GIVING ADVICE</u>	إعطياء النصيحية					
- I don't think that you should	لا أعتقد أنه يجب عليك أن					
- I think that you should	أعتقد أنه يجب عليك أن					
- I'd think twice about	سافكر مرتين بشأن					
- If I were you, I'd	لو أنني في مكانك , سوف					
- If you want my honest opinion	إذا كنت تريد رأيي بأمانة ,					
Examples:- 2 Complete the sentences to answer the question	S.					
1- How do you think I should learn the new words from						
If I were you, I'd write them down and look a						
2- It's very hot What do you think I should do today?						
I don't think that you should wear very heav						
3- This river water looks clean and I'd like to drink it V	•					
I'd think twice about drinking water from the						
4- My English friend would like to see some interestin I think that your friend should visit the pyrai						
5- Can I ask your advice? I have an exam tomorrow,						
What do you think I should do?						
If you want my honest opinion, you should o	concentrate on يركز علي you study.					
THE PASS	imer xo ive voice					
<u>PASSIVE VERBS: PAST AND PRES</u>	الأفعال في المبنى للمجهول : الماضي و المضارع SENT					
	 نستخدم المبنى للمجهول لكى تبين ما تكون مهتما به أكثر: 					
- My friend painted that picture last year.	(You are interested in the friend.)					
- The picture was painted by my friend last year.	(You are interested in the picture.)					
من قام بالحدث:	 نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما لا تعرف أو ليس من المهم أن تعرف ما 					
- Two books have been taken from our classroom.	(We do not know who took them.)					
- Before roads were built across the desert, few visito	brs came to this town.					
	(It doesn't matter who built the roads.)					
	نستخدم المبنى للمجهول عندما يكون واضحا من قام بالحدث:					
- They were arrested at the airport.	(Only police officers can arrest people.)					
Present simple						
مبنى للمعلوم Active	مبنى للمجهول Passive					
s/es+مصدر , inf / مصدر ,	am/is/are + pp					
-Someone cleans this room every day.	- This room is cleaned every day.					
Present continuo						
مبنى للمعلوم Active	مبنى للمجهول Passive					
am/is/are + v. + ing	am/is/are + being +pp					
- Somebody is mending my car.	- My car is being mended .					

Hello English

Past simple	الماضي البسيط		
مبنى للمعلوم Active	مبنى للمجهول Passive		
التصريف الثاني للفعل	was/ were + pp		
- Somebody painted this room yesterday.	- This room was painted yesterday.		
Past continuous	الماضي المستمر		
مبنى للمعلوم Active	مبنى للمجهول Passive		
was / were + v. + ing	was/were + being + pp		
-She was washing the dishes when I arrived.	-The dishes were being washed		
Present perfec	المضارع التام t		
مبنى للمعلوم Active	مبنى للمجهول Passive		
Has /have + pp	has/have +been + pp		
- Somebody has planted some trees.	- Some trees have been planted.		
Past perfect	· ••		
مبنى للمعلوم Active	مبنى للمجهول Passive		
had + pp	had + been + pp		
-When Mr Ali arrived, she found that thieves had broken into her shop.	 When Mrs. Ali arrived, she found that her shop had been broken into. 		
المستقبل البسيط Future simple مبنى للمجهول Passive مبنى للمعلوم Active			
will + inf.	will + be + pp		
-They will build new house here next year.	- New houses will be built here next year.		
Be going	سوف to		
مبنى للمعلوم Active	مبنى للمجهول Passive		
be going to + inf.	be going to + be + pp		
- My boss is going to give us a rise - We are going to be given a rise.			
Simple modal will / would / shall / should /can / could / may / mig			
مبنى للمعلوم Active	مبنى للمجهول Passive		
Modal + inf.	Modal + be + pp		
- We may find more oil	- More oil may be found .		
Perfect modals	الأفعال الناقصة التامة		
مبنى للمعلوم Active	مبنى للمجهول Passive		
Modal + have + pp	Modal + have + been + pp		
-Someone must have opened the door.	- The door must have been opened.		
ت	ملاحظ		
لمبنى للمجهول:	بيح لا يمكن استخدام الأفعال اللازمة (التي لا تأخذ مفعول به) في صيغة ا		
- She walked for three hours.			
(لا يمكن استخدام صيغة المبنى للمجهول لأن الفعل walk فعل لازم)			
كه إذا كانت الجملة منفية بـ don't / doesn't نستخدم .am not / is not / aren't + p.p أما إذا كانت منفية بـ didn't نستخدم .wasn't / weren't + p.p			
- The police don't allow big cars into the city centre.	(Big cars) (Big cars)		
- Big cars aren't allowed into the city centre.	(
- Tom didn't answer exam. (The exam)	- The exam wasn't answered by Tom.		
يم إذا كانت الجملة تبدأ بـ Nobody / No one نحول ever إلى never إن وجدت. و في حالة عدم و جودها ننفى بـ not			
29			
nanananananananananananananananananana	an tere tere 2 de la teres 2 have de la de la de		

First Year	Hello English	Second Term			
- Nobody has ever beaten me at	chess. (I)	I have never been beaten at chess.			
- No one must ever break the lay		The law must never be broken .			
	، الأول أو الثاني.	به إذا كانت الجملة تحتوى على مفعولين يمكن أن نبدأ بالمفعول			
- He gave me a nice camera .		(I / A nice camera)			
- I was given a nice camera.		A nice camera was given to me.			
		عندما نبدأ بالمفعول الثاني نستخدم حرف الجر to أو for			
		الأفعال التي تأخذ حرف الجر to هي:			
۱ / یمرر pass / یقد offer / یعطی give owe / یخبر tell / یوصل deliver / یسلم		hand / يقرأ read / يسلف lend / يبين show / يحضر			
		الأفعال التي تأخذ حرف الجر for هي:			
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	-	يحتفظ بـ keep يترك leave / يوفر save / يشتر ع			
	ں make / يقطع cut / يدعو call				
•		م يمكن أن نستخدم الفعل get بدلا من verb to be عند ا			
arr - يقبض على catch		يقتل kill - يدمر destroy يدمر			
	حرق burn - يتزوج marry -	,			
- The police caught the bank rob					
		يم في حالة وجود ظرف (adv.) يوضع قبل التصريف الثالث. المحصومات بالانتفجيمي مط فوريس بالتوريسية المثالث.			
		- Your work must be carefully planned .			
		يح في حالة الأفعال المتبوعة بـ (to + inf.) نستخدم (.p.p طنيبة وطا ما			
- I want you to tell me the truth.		t to be told the truth. (v.+ ing) نستخدم (v.+ ing) نستخد م (v.+ ing) نستخدم (v.+ ing)			
- I hate people telling me lies.					
		•			
UNIT 13 Great	works of engin	eering (Workbook)			
1 Complete the sentences with the correct words. altitude f rozen oxygen permanently run sea level stages supply					
a He does not like that restaurant	-	. <i>frozen</i> food.			
 b What does the c Mount Everest is nearly 9,000 n 					
d At this height, climbers need					
e The temperature is					
f How often do the buses					
g Take a goodof w					
 h It is difficult to build a bridge qui 2 Match the numbers or dates. 	ckly, so engineers usually	build it in			
a 64	1 sixter	en sixty-six			
b 685		housand and sixteen			
c 6,072	3 sixty-				
d 2016		ousand and seventy-two			
e 1666		undred and eighty-five			
3 Now write the numbers below		s an hour			
a In this town, cars can go at about b The Great Wall of China is more					
c The Tibet railway opened in		•			
d That bridge was built					
e The Tanggula Pass is		5,072 metres above sea level.			
1 Find and correct the mistakes					
a Her parents is employed by the		(are)			
 b That company was operated the c The company is taken over by the 		() ()			
d Who was this book wrote by?		()			
e The lighthouse was build in the	last century.	()			
2 Complete the sentences with	the correct passive form	n of the verb in brackets.			
a The Suez Canal					
1	30				
1 In an tear tear tear tear tear tear tear tear		A north and the content of the conte			

Hello English

Second Term

b You(not charge) to v	visit most museums in London
c The Pyramids(visit) by n	
d Do you know when the Great Wall of China	
e That book(write) in 19	
3 Write questions for these answers.	
•	2
a When was the Suez Canal opened	
The Suez Canal was opened in 1869.	2
b When	
The Pyramids were built about 4,500 years a	
Where	
A lot of the world's cotton is grown in Egypt	0
What	
Clock s are used for telling the time.	
1 Write answers to these questions.	
a Who operates the Suez Cana?	
The Suez Canal authority operates it	ute as into them?
b Can you name some places that charge yo	
c Whose income is the highest, a doctor or a	
d What can affect how well you do in an exam	n <i>?</i>
e Why might someone shorten their clothes?	n han shada da shira dha shira a shira a
2 Rewrite the sentences using the words i	
a The hotel asked him to pay a lot of money t	
The hotel charged him a lot of money to use i	
b You can make the journey shorter by taking	
c They are very kind. They give half the mone	
	sters when her parents are at work. <i>(take care</i> of)
e Please can you remove these boxes from n	ny room? (take away)
1 Match to complete the conversation.	4 and the model in second states
a Huda Hello, Ola. Can I ask	1 as the road is very slow.
b Huda I need to get from here	2 helpful
c Huda How would you suggest	3 I would take the bus.
d Ola I don't think that you should go by	4 to the library.
e Ola I'd think twice about driving	5 that I get there?
f Ola If you want my honest opinion,	6 your advice?
g Huda Thanks, Ola . That's very	7 train, as the library is not near the station.
	nslation *
<u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u>	
1. No one is going to hand you success o	on a silver plate. If you want to make it, you will have to
make it on your own.	· · · · · ·
-	cars that may cause no pollution to the environment
	nore in the world today for the simple reason that they
have better memories and can store huge	
	ce have brought about great changes in our lives in this
century. You have only to think of the	development of air transport, television and electrical
power to realize what we owe to scientists	•
•	يدين owe / الجوى النقل Air transport / يجلب bring about / ا
	nd proteins. It has to be fresh and low in fat and salt. It
-	•
should contain no harmful chemical additi	ves
<u>B- Translate into English:</u>	
-	1- تقع مصدر على الساحل الشرقي من أفريقيا.
	2- يقدم التلفاز برامج تعليمية ناجحة بالإضافة إلى المباريات والمسلسلات.
	2 يام المال شراع السعادة أو الصحة أو الحب.
	4- لا يسل بعد الوسائل الهامة للمعرفة . 4- يُعد السفر أحد الوسائل الهامة للمعرفة .
ر القه اتب	

5- يجب أن نرشد استهلاك الكهرباء والمياه حتى نوفر قدرا من المال المدفوع فى الفواتير

ي. هي - 1 - 1000 - 1000 - 1000 - 1000 - 1000 - 1000 - 1000 - 1000 - 1000 - 1000 - 1000 - 1000 - 1000 - 1000 - 1000

31

Hello English

Second Term





explore	يستكشف	crime	جريمة	across	عبر
exploration	استكشاف	criminal	مجرم	miss	يفتقد - يفوته
balloon	منطاد	commit	يرتكب	fuel	وقود
rubber	مطاط	serve	يخدم	final	نهائي
decoration	زخرفة ـ ديكور	servant	خادم	finally	أخيراً
law	قانون	service	خدمة		قائمة أسماء
lawyer	محامى	agreement	اتفاق - قبول	menu	قائمة طعام
lawful	قانوني	disagreement	اختلاف - رفض	go round	يدور ـ يلف
realise	يدرك	fog	ضباب	took off	تقلع (طائرة)
realization	إدراك	foggy	غائم - ضبابي		متأخر
realism	واقعية	accompany	يصطحب	later	فيما بعد
available	متاح - متوفر	kidnap	يخطف شخص	lately	مؤخرا - حديثا
familiar	مألوف	kidnapped	مخط_وف	sample	عينة
unfamiliar	غير مألوف	rescue	ينقذ	simple	بسيط
court	محكمـــة	rescuer	منقذ	world	العالم
type : kind	نــــوع	weigh	يزن	ship	سفينة
science fiction	خيال علمي	weight	وزن	boat	قـــارب
story	قصة	race	سباق	notes	ملاحظات
novel	قصة	human race	جنس بشری	find out	يكتشف
novelist	روائي	fortune	حظ - ثروة	come back	يعــود
playwright	كاتب مسرحي	fortunately	لحسن الحظ	return	يعــود
writer	کاتب	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	end	نهاية
article	مقال	save	يوفر ـ يدخر	at the end	أخيرا
poem	قصيدة	saving	ادخار	in the end	فى نهاية
poet	شاعر	savings	مدخرات	describe	يصف
poetry	شعر	die	يموت	descriptive	وصفى
rocket	صاروخ	dead	ميت	description	وصف
submarine	غواصة	death	موت	journey	رحلة طويلة
compare	يقارن	deadly	مميــــت	expedition	رحلة استكشافية
comparison		horseback	ظهر الخيل	picnic	نزهة
idea	فكرة	luxury	رفاهية - ترف	prepare	يعد - يجهز
partner	شريك	gain	يكتسب	transport	النق_ل
argue	يجادل	challenge	يتحدي - تحدي		معاليم
argument	جدل - نقاش	charity	جمعية خيرية	excite	يثير
arrest : capture	يقبض على - يأسر	charitable	خيري	excitement	إثــــارة
Expressions					

on the way
save from
get to

filled with	ملوء ب	on the way	فى الطريق
come out	يظهر / يخرج	save from	ينقذ من
available for	متاح لـ / متوافر لـ	get to	يصل إلى
speak for	يتحدث نيابة عن	come up	تظهر
on their journey	في رحلتهم	work for	يعمل لدى
listen to	يستمع إلى	keep away from	يبتعد عن
leave for	يرحل إلى	earn money	يكسب المال
busy with	مزدحم بـ	live on	يعيش على
hear of	يسمع عن	go round	يدور / ينف
grow up	يکبر	pay for	يدفع ثمن



Hello English

Second Term

Definitions a small coloured rubber bag filled with air used as decoration. balloon بالون/منطاد came out became available / known for people to buy. تظهر / تنشر traveling through an unfamiliar area to find out what it is like. استكشاف exploration someone who advises people about the law and speak for them in court. lawyer to notice something not understood before. يدرك realise science fiction books and stories about life in the future. خيال علمى argument a disagreement between people. حوار / جدال criminal a person who has done something bad. a person who works for another person. servant kidnapped taken until someone gives money for the person to be free وف Language Notes him on his journey to America. رحلة طويلة (برية / جوية) - His wife accompanied 1- journey: رحلة (بحرية / فضائية) - During their voyage at sea, a storm blew. voyage: فى الميعاد punctual فى الميعاد - Despite the bad weather, our plane left on time. • in time: not late, early enough. في الوقت المناسب - We arrived at the airport in time to eat before the plane lefty. 3- during + v. noun خلال :اسم - I woke up several times during the night. أشاء was / were + v. + ing: أشاء was / were + v. + ing: I heard him come in while we were having dinner. I heard him come in while having dinner. - He managed to get the driving test. (succeeded) 4- manage + to + يتمكن من : مصدر succeed in + v. + ing: ينجع في - He succeeded in getting the driving test. وسيلة مواصلات + by -5 by (plane - train - ship - boat - car - taxi - elephant - bus.) لكن نقول on foot / on horseback وسيلة مواصلات + أداة أو صفة ملكية + On on (a ship – a plane – the bus – the train – my bicycle) in a car / in my car / in a taxi لكن نقول 6- accept: (an invitation / an offer / an apology / a present / a bribe / advice) يقبل (دعوة / عرض / اعتذار / هدية / رشوة / نصيحة) - She accepted his invitation to dance. agree: (لا يليه مفعول به) - He suggested going to the club but no one agreed. agree to: (a plan / a suggestion / an idea) (خطة / اقتراح / فكرة They finally agreed to our offer. - I objected يعترض and they agreed with me. يتفق مع (شخص) agree with: - They are still trying to **agree on** a date for the wedding. يتفق على / يحدد :agree on يقضى وقت : (v – ing): يقضى وقت : - Jules Verne spent a lot of his time writing stories. 8- Stop + v. + ing: يمنع - He stopped paying for his son's studies and told him he had to find a job 9- avoid + v. + ing: يتجنب - He avoids meeting bad people. 10- Verbs and Nouns Catch Catch a criminal يمسك الكرة / يصد Catch a ball يقبض على المجرم Catch a disease يلحق الأتوبيس Catch a bus يصاب بمرض Catch a train Catch cold يلحق القطار يصاب بالبرد Catch flue يلحق الطائرة يصاب بالإنفلونزا Catch a flight Lose Lose a ball Lose a race يضيع الكرة. هدف يضيع السباق Lose a criminal Lose weight يفلت المجرم يفقد وزن ي Lose appetite يضيع مبارة يفقد الشهية Lose a match Miss تفوته المباراة Miss a ball Miss a match يفقد الكرة Miss a bus Miss a train يفوته الأتوبيس يفوته القطار Miss a flight تفوته الرحل Miss a person يفتقد شخص 11- poetry فن الشعر - Farouk Gowaida writes poetry. Prose - Newspaper articles are written in prose. 12- fortune = luck - It was her good fortune to win such a great amount of money.

Hello English

Second Term

a fortune = wealth ٿروة - She must have spent a fortune on her wedding dress.
على مستوى العالم العالم العالم العالم العالم
- Chinese products are well known across (all over) the world.
في نهاية شيئ
- At the end of the month, I'll travel.
in the end = finally - In the end my friend arrived.
15- kidnap يختطف شخص - The thief kidnapped the woman and killed her.
•
Critical Thinking *
1. Name two of Jules Verne's most famous novels.
- Journey to the Centre of the Earth and Around the World in Eighty Days.
2. Why do many people call Jules Verne the father of science fiction ? - Because he wrote stories
about air travel, space travel and submarines before planes, rockets or submarines were used.
3. What shows that Jules Verne wanted to travel so much when he was very young?
 He hid on a ship as it was leaving Nantes for America.
4. What did Jules Verne do after he left school? - After he left school, he studied to be a lawyer.
5. Why did Jules Verne's father stop paying for his son's studies?
- Because Jules spent a lot of his time writing stories about journeys.
6. What was Jules Verne's first story called? - Five Weeks in a Balloon.
7. What did Jules Verne do to earn money to live?
- He wrote two books every year and earned enough money to live.
8. What is Jules Verne's most well-known book?
 His most well-known book is Around the World in Eighty Days. 9. What is Jules Verne's last novel? The Lighthouse at the End of the World.
5
10. When did Jules Verne's last novel come out? - His last novel came out after his death.
11. Where did the story begin? - The story began in a London club.
12. In what year does the story begin? - In 1872
13. Where does Fogg begin and end his journey in "Around the World in Eighty Days"? - London.
14. Why do you think Fogg has the time to spend travelling for 80 days?
 Because he is a very rich man who does not need to work.
15. Why does Phileas Fogg's friend think Fogg cannot travel round the world in 80 days?
- He thinks it will be impossible to do it so quickly, because transport was slow then.
16. Would you like to travel around the world as fast as possible? How would you travel?
- Yes, I would. By air.
17. How much will Fogg win if he succeeds? - If Fogg succeeds, he will win £20,000.
18. Why did Fogg and his friends have to travel by elephant in India?
- Because the railway line was not finished.
19. What do you think Fogg's servant does on the journey?
- He carries things, looks after Fogg's clothes and prepares his food, books tickets etc.
20. How do you think Fogg and Passepartout prepared for their journey?
- I think they prepared food, drink and arranged for means of transport.
21. What do you think Fogg's friend says to him when he arrives back in London after 80 days?
- He congratulates him.
22. Why do you think Fogg decided to try to go round the world in eighty days?
- He wanted the challenge تحدي and excitement. Perhaps he needed something to fill his free time.
23. If you had the chance to travel round the world, which route would you choose? - Land route.
24. What would you most look forward to seeing on this journey?
- Sights معالم , parks, museums and historical places.
25. Many people use journeys like these to collect money for charity. Which charity would you
collect money for? Why?
- Building hospitals to cure chronic مزمن diseases like cancer, caring of orphans and homeless to
to help them lead a normal life. معاناة their pains and suffering يخفف
26. What did Fix think of Fogg? - The criminal that he was looking for.
27. What did Fogg and Passepartout lose in Britain? They lost a day and so lost the money.
28. Why did Passepartout discover that it was December 20, not December 21?
- Because they travelled east and crossed the International Date Line and saved a day.
- Decause they travelled east and crossed the international Date Line and Saved a day.

	1 mil 1 m 		
First Year	Hello Engl	lish	Second Term
29. When did Aouda go wit - After they saved her f		out on their journey?	
30. What do Fogg and Pass	separtout miss in New	York? - They miss t	heir boat to Liverpool.
31. What two things do the	y lose in Britain? - Th	ney lose a day and so lose	the money.
		nmar *)	
<u>R</u>	ELATIVE CLA	عبارات الوصل USES	
	101 51.	میر وصل و تستخدم فی تحدید اسم ا	
- The man paid for Jules's stu - The man <u>who paid for Jule</u>	udies - 1 Ses's studies was his fath	The man was his father. her.	
The neurol was Around the V		جملتين بينهما اسم مشترك لعدم تكر	
 <u>The novel</u> was Around the Jules Verne, who was Frence 		- The novel came of	ut in 1873
- His father, <u>who was a lawy</u>	r <u>er</u> , paid for Jules's studie		
 Jules Verne was born in National - Around the World in Eighty 			
		أو المفعول. أما whom فتحل محا	
- The woman is in hospital. S			(who)
The woman who was injure - The boy was not at home. I		ospital.	(who / whom)
The boy whom / who I wan			
			- تستخدم which لتحل محل الفا: (طعنطييد)
 Hala works for a company. Hala works for a company was serviced as a company serviced as a com			(which)
- The shoes don't fit very wel			(which)
- The shoes which Nadia bo		ره ره ۳۰ بره بر م	the total states and states
- He came first, which made h		ر إلي الجملة التي تسبقها و ليس الا	- يمكن أن تستخدم (which) لتتنبي
		(which) أو تأتى في أي مكان الد	 بمكن أن تستخدم حروف الجر قبل
- The bus by which we go to s	•		,
		•	- يمكن استخدام (that) بدلا من
-The man that has been work	o , , ,	ed.	
 Omer that you met yesterda The food that you make taste 		Reham bought a mobile th	at was expensive.
-	جملة:	t) يل تأتي في المكان المناسب في اا	- لا تستخدم حروف الجر قبل (hat
- The man for that you work is	s very kind. (X) - The m	an that you work for is vei التالية	ry kind. (√) لاحظ استخدام that في الحالات -
- I lent her <u>all</u> the money that		Vahid was <u>the only</u> friend	that helped me.
- The fox is the <u>cleverest</u> anin		ا. ي فيه أو حيث" و تعود على المكان	- تستخدم (Where) بمعنى "الذ
- This is the room where I sle	•	A school is the place wher	
where = in which /			about which
- This is the room in which I s	•	A school is a place at whic فیه أو عندما" و تعود على اسم زما	
-1980 is the year when I was	born I	Friday is the day when we	
- Friday is the day on which (When = in /		me at which I get up
. hady to the day on which (- لاحظ المثال الآتــــي
- I don't like August which is	very hot.	n12	-
mv/his/h	الملکيه و هي er / its / our / you		تستخدم (whose) للملكية و تد
- We met a lady. Her daught We met a lady whose daug	er has just got married. ((whose)	
	35		
na 1 ann 1 Ann 1 ann 1		nna i ona i ona i o na i ona i ona i one en en en e nti i ona i one i one i ona i	aan 1 a

Hello English Second Term First Year حذف ضمائر الوصل <u>OMISSION OF RELATIVE PRONOUNS</u> - يتم حذف كل من (who – which – whom) عندما يحلوا محل مفعول(اذا جاء بعدهم فاعل): - This is the woman who I helped. - This is the woman I helped. - يمكن حذف كل من (who - which) في الحالات التالية: - إذا جاء بعدهم زمن مستمر و في هذه الحالة يتم حذف الضمير و (be) ويتبقى (v.ing) - The boy who is wearing a red shirt is my son. - The boy wearing a red shirt is my son. = - إذا جاء بعدهم صيغة مبنى للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا الضمير و (verb to be) ويبقي التصريف الثالث للفعل . -The girl who was arrested yesterday stole clothes from shops. -The girl arrested yesterday stole clothes from shops. - إذا جاء بعدهم (verb to be) كفعل أساسى وهنا يتم حذف الضمير و (verb to be) -The woman who is in this shop, lent me this pen. -The woman in this shop lent me this pen. - يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا كان بعده جار و مجرور (حرف جر واسم) - The girl who is at the supermarket wants to buy some sweets. - The girl at the supermarket wants to buy some sweets. - يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل إذا كان بعده (صفة + (be) ..) -The girl who was lazy didn't go to school yesterday. -The lazy girl didn't go to school yesterday. - يمكن استخدام (to + inf.) بدلا من عبارة الوصل اذا كان ضمير الوصل في الجملة يحل محل الفاعل مع كلمات مثل The first / second / last - I was the first person who left the ship. = - I was the first person to leave the ship. - لا يمكن استخدام that بدلا من which إلا إذا وضعنا حرف الجر بعد الفعل - The house by which I came arrived late. - The train arrived late. I came by it. - The train that I came by arrived late. لاحظ أن هناك نوعان من جمل الصفة • النوع الأول يعطى معلومة أساسية عن الشيء أو الشخص أو المكان الذي نتحدث عنه ونستخدم في هذا النوع who / which / whom ولا نستخدم comma قبل أو بعد عبارة الوصل. ويمكن استخدام that بدلا من ضمائر الوصل. - The supermarket which I work for buys goods from Cairo. - The man that Ibrahim met at the airport was from Scotland. • والنوع الثاني لا تقدم عبارة الوصل معلومة هامة عن الشيء أو الشخص أو المكان الذي نتحدث عنه ولا بد من استخدام comma قبل وبعد عبارة الوصل و لا تستخدم that في هذا النوع - Mr. Wong, who has just arrived in Egypt, is the chief buyer for a Chinese company. - The company, which is in Beijing, employs 1,000 people. UNIT 14 Around the World in Eighty Days (Workbook) 1 Correct the mistakes about Jules Verne. listen to check your answers. Jules Verne was born in Nantes in the south of France a)..... in 1928. His father was a doctor. Nantes was a busy town b)..... with a large airport. Planes were coming and going all c)..... the time. When he was a teenager, Jules hid on a plane d)..... which was going to Africa. e)..... When he left school, Jules studied to be a teacher, but f)..... he spent so much time playing football that his father <u>q</u>)..... stopped paying for his studies. In 1863, his first poem, h)..... which was called Five Months in a Cinema, came out. 1)..... Jules Verne was born in 1905. J)..... 2 Complete the sentences using the following words. exploration balloon come out fiction lawyer realise a Sciencefiction..... books are about life in the future. **b** A hot aircan be used to travel to far places. c On a journey of people discover new places. **d** Millions of people are waiting for the new book to..... e Aspeaks for a person who has been arrested. f If you something, you suddenly know it. 1 Complete the sentences with who, which or where. a Charles Dickens was the writer wrote Oliver Twist. **b** Someone I enjoy listening to is my grandfather. c I watched an interesting programme on TV about Neil



Hello English

Second Term

 Armstrong, the first man walked on the moon. d Last year, I visited Alexandria, the city	eek?
 I did it last night I met him for lunch yesterday 	
 I'm meeting you there on Wednesday • they' re building it near to my house 	
a What is the name of the writer who wrote The Old Man and the Sea?	
 b I am still trying to find the homework c My father is the only person in our family 	
e The new airport will open in three years.	
f here are the new CDs	
g The man	
h The café is in the city centre.	
3 Complete to make sentences.	
a A camel is an animalwhich has adapted to living in the desert	
b A dictionary is a book c A kitchen is a room d A mechanic is someonee A passenger is a person	
f Tennis is a sport	
1 Choose the correct words.	
a After seven days, Fogg and Passepartout arrived in Suez <i>which / where</i> they met F	ïx
b Fix thought that Fogg was the criminal which / who he was looking for.	
c In / On their journey through India, they rescued a young woman.	
d During / While the journey from San Francisco to New York,	
Passepartout was kidnapped	
2 Rewrite these sentences using the words in brackets.	
a The police managed to get the thief as he was running away.	(catch)
The police managed to catch the thief as he was running away.	(actob)
b My illness began at Leila's birthday party. c My taxi had to wait in a traffic jam, so I didn't catch my train.	(catch) (miss)
d To run in the race, I must be less heavy.	(lose)
e My football team didn't win their match at the weekend.	(lose)
f My family are on holiday. I wish I could see them.	(miss)
g Everyone at school has flu. I hope I am not infected.	(catch)
(* Translation *)	
A Translate into Arabia:	

<u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u>

1. When you plant a tree, you are helping your environment. It will provide shade in the summer and be a source of relief on hot days.

2. We can learn a lot of by traveling. At school we learn geography and it tells us about other countries. When we visit a foreign country, we see a different kind of life and listen to new ideas.

3. A computer has the power to calculate at superhuman speed and so it can quickly solve problems that would take any human mathematician years of work.

4. Many tourists visit Egypt every year. Their number is growing year after year. They are attracted by our ancient monuments, beautiful beaches and fine weather.

5. Many people say that they are too busy to go swimming or to play football. But they do not have to do special exercises to be fit.

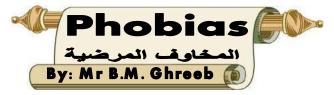
A- Translate into English:

1- معظم الحيوانات لها عمود فقرى عدا الحشرات. 2- يعتمد النجاح في الحياة على الصبر والعمل الجاد. 3- تهتم وزارة التربية والتعليم بتطوير التعليم في كافة المراحل. 4- يجب تحسين وسائل النقل العام حتى نتغلب على مشكلة الازدحام. 5- إنني متفائل بأن اقتصادنا سوف يزدهر ويرتفع مستوى المعيشة .

Hello English

Second Term





					-
phobia	خوف مرضي	purpose	غـــرض	criminal	مجـــرم
fear	خـــوف	ground	أرض	crime	جريمــــة
dizzy	مصاب بالدوار		يجفــف	customer	زبـــون
get over	يتغلب على	drought	جفــــاف	extreme	زائد - إضافي
panic	خوف ـ رعب	dryness	تجفيـــف	extremist	متطـــرف
avoid	يتجنبيب	rain	تمطر _ مطر	extremism	تطـــرف
avoidance	تجنـــب	dust	تــــراب	frightened	خائــــف
spider	عنكبــــوت	dusty	متــــرب	bridge	کوبـــري
spider web	شبكة عنكبوت	balance	تــــوازن	remains	آثار - بقايا
physical	بدنــــي	hundred	مائـــــة	relax	يستريح ـ يستجم
buildings	مبانــــي	own	يمتلــــــــــك	pick	يقطف - يلتقط
doll	دُمْيَــــة	rope	حبـــل	hard	صعب ۔ شاق
overcrowded	مزدحم جدا	affect	يۇئىر	expert	خبيـــر
space	فضــــاء	effect	تأثيــــر	percent	بالمائــــة
open space	فضاء مفتوح		عقلي - منطقي	suffer	يعانــــى
sharks	سمك القرش	irrational	غير منطقي	suffering	معانىساة
dark	ظـــــلام	session	جنســـة	remember	يتذكـــر
light	نـــور	situation	موقـــف	remind	یذکـــر
lighten	ينيـــر	anxiety	القَلــــق	fail	يفشـــل
ancient	قدیـــــم	therapist	مُعالِج - محلل نفسي	failure	فشـــل
reasonable	منطقي - معقول	virtue	فضيآة	disappoint	يخيب أمل
hate	یکــــرہ	virtual	واقعي ـ عملي	disappointed	مُحبَـــط
hatred	کراھیــــة	high	عالــــي	disappointment	خيبة أمل - إحباط
lift	مصعــــد	height	ارتفاع	inform	يخبـــر
large	كبير ـ واسع	reason	بىبىيىيىنىن	information	معلومــــات
particular	محسيدد	cause	ىمىرىسىيىپ	questionnaire	استبيان - استفتاع
birth	میـــلاد	treat	يعالممسج	nervous	عصبـــي
stone	حجـــر	treatment	عـــلاج	nerves	أعصياب
rock	صخــــرة	patient	مريض ـ صبور	take off	يقلــــع
injured	جريــــح	patience	صبــــر	land	يهط
injury	جرح ـ إصابة	hurt	يجرح ـ يؤذي	cloud	سحــــاب
hole	فتحةً ـ ثقب	harm	ضــَـرر	cloudy	غائم ۔ به سحب
score	يحرز ـ يسجل	harmful	ضــــار	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
goal	هــــدف	assistant	بائع ـ مساعد		يتبـــادل
aim	هــــدف	assist	يساّعـــد	change	يحول ـ يغير
target	هــــدف	assert	يۇكــــد	convert	يغير - يحول

Expressions

afraid of	خائف من	go up	يصعد
frightened of	مرعوب من	get away	يهرب / يبتعد
grow up	يكبر / ينمو	come from	یأتی من / ینشأ من
turn (spin) round	يدور حول / يلف حول		يقلق من
get over	يتغلب على / يشفى من	look like	يشبه
recover from	یشفی من	fall off his bicycle	يقع من على دراجته
fear of	خوف من	get off	ينزل من (وسيلة مواصلات)
feeling of	شعور ب / إحساس ب	get on	يركب
make sure	بتأكد	break down	يتعطل / ينهار عصبياً
have a phobia about	لديه خوف من	fall asleep	يغلبه النوم



- 0

Hello English

be born with		مولود ب	in control of		مسيطر على	
take off		يخلع الملابس / تقلع الم	get close to		يقترب من يلتقط	
It doesn't ma		لا يهم	pick up		•	
fail an exam		يفشل في الامتحان	run away from		يهرب من	
		Ор	posites			
	Word			Opposite		
panic		يخاف / يفزع	stay calm		يبقى هادئا	
get over an i	llness	یشفی من مرض	catch an illness		يصاب بمرض	
dizzy		يشعر بدوار	clear headed		صافى الذهن	
frightened			relaxed		هادئ / مسترخي	
dark			light		يدى يصاب بمرض صافى الذهن هادئ / مسترخي ضوء / نور يفقد السيطرة	
take control		يتحكم	lose control		يفقد السيطره	
		_	rivatives			
	Verb		loun	Adjecti		
calm	يهدأ	calmness	هدو ع تعدينا	calm	هادئ	
complete	يكمل	completion	تكملة	complete	كامل	
fear	يخاف	fear	خوف است. ماه	fearful	مخيف	
relax	يسترحى ينام	relaxation	استرخاء	relaxed	مسترخي نعسان	
sleep	ينام	sleep	نوم	sleepy	يعسان	
		Dei	finitions			
fear	the feeling you g will happen.	jet when you are	afraid or worried that	at something bad	خوف ـ فزع	
phobia		onable fear of so	mething.		خوف مرضى	
phobia a strong, unreasonable fear of something. dizziness feeling that you are losing your balance, for example, because you have been spinning						
get over		er a bad experien	ce, or after being ill		يتغلب علي	
a sudden strong feeling of fear or anxiety that makes you unable to think						
avoid	clearly or behave sensibly برجب d to make sure that something bad does not happen					
situation				and place	ينجنب موقف	
موقف that exist at a particular time and place. موقف irrational not reasonable						
session		used for a particu	ilar nurnose		حير بسي حلسة	
therapist			ental or physical illn	ess	محلل نفسی	
virtual	real.				واقعي/حقيقي	
 effect: (r 2- cause of: reason for 	سبب + noun / v. + ing فعل + فاعل + ۱۷		- The fire affecte - The fire had a ba - The police are st - I don't know the - I don't know the	ed both buildings bad ad effect on both bui ill trying to find the ca reason for his abser reason why he is a للتعبير عن عادة في الماضي	ldings. ause of the fire. nce. bsent.	
- He w He u	as in the habit of sed to smoke whe	en he was young.	e was young. (used	to)	, ,	
⊡- He usu He is u	am / is / are + used to + v. + .ing:					
miss:	4- lose: يخسر - The team played well, but lost the game He lost a lot of money at races.					
5- remind: • remember	يتُذكر بواسطة شخص) ب من تلقاء نفسهer	یذکر (Remind یتذکر	me to post the letter - She remember	r. He reminds m red to take medicine.	e of his father.	
6- like بحب / h	nate يکره + v. + ing:	- like playing	chess I h	ate watching terror	films.	

Hello English

7- make + مفعول + مصدر أو صفة + مفعول : - The bad weather made us stay at ho	ome I	يجعل His success made l	his family happy.
9 without LV Ling: AND		Ho loft without	aving goodbyo
9- It's possible for to + أن :مصدر			
			tion with the things he fears.
		has a strong visual	impact.
هذه الكلمة تستخدم كصّفة وظرف 11- hard صعب The question is hard.		bed is hard .	خشــن
He studied hard. She works h		It rains hard	يغزارة
عهدف إلى مصدر + 12- aim to			bin the university.
یه دف الی aim at + (v + ing)			ining the university.
with the aim of + (v + ing) بهدف	- Research is		
13- be situated = be located = lie		•	يقع
The hotel is (situated) located on the la			se lies on the lake side.
14- expert in (on)	Н	e is an expert in (o	n) the field of technology.
15- do a questionnaire			يجرى استبيان - استفتاء
The government did a questio			to ovehange this shirt
ال بـ - يُتبادل (n, v) آ 16- exchange شخصا بشخص آخر For For	ن (و تبدل - یسب	- ۲۵ ۱۸۴ - ۲۵ است. م Sho م	xchanged a blouse for a skirt
exchange ۲۰۲ مربع exchange With	ی ر سیت جندی ،و . بتسادل مع	- He exchar	naed things with his friends
in exchange for = in return with			في مقابل , على سبيل المبادلة
She gave her friend a skirt in e	exchange for a	a blouse.	
17- pick up	U U		يلتقط ۔ يأخذ شخص في سيارة
 My bag fell down, so I picked it up. 			y friend with me to the club.
فتار pick out	-		t my clothes myself.
18- take part in = share in = participate			part in the poetry competition?
take place = happen = occur	یحدث یحل محل		cident take place?
take the place of = replace take off	یحن محن یخلع – تقلع	- He resigned and	home, I took off my coat.
take over	یتونی مهمة		s death he took over his work.
take after	يشبه		er mother completely.
	C ซ์ที่สดใ โก่	inking *	
•		ional fear (unjustifi	ed fear <i>) غیر مبرر</i>
2. What kinds of things are people con			a ata
 Heights, spiders, insects, mice, s 3. Why does it take a few sessions of 			
- It takes time to build up their con		•	
4. Which treatment would be best to b			
- To be near a real spider as depe		-	-
5. Why do you think many people with	fear of flying	g still travel on pla	nes?
- As they have to travel for their w			
6. Should you make people do someth			
- No, we should respect that some	• •		
force people to do something they do not 7. How can a computer programme be			
- The patient is put into a virtual si			5 :
8. Why do some phobias need medicin			relax before treatment
9. What do some patients with phobia			
- They realize that the thing they a			
10. How is a phobia different from a fe		phobia is stronger t	than a fear, and is irrational.
11. How can phobias affect people's li			
- They can make them frightened			
12. What wouldn't the person with a fe			
 13. Why do you think a lot of people an Because butterflies are beautiful 			
14. What is the best treatment for peop		0,	
	40		
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •			

Hello English Second Term First Year - The best treatment is to slowly show the person who has the phobia what they fear. - Some people with phobias need medicine. - It is also possible to have treatment from a computer program, where the patient is put into a virtual situation with the thing he or she fears. 15. Why is it important for the patients with phobias to relax? - The treatment will not work if patients panic. 16. Why do some phobias need medicine? - To help them relax before treatment. 17. How can a computer programme used in treating some phobias ? - The patient is put into a virtual situation with the thing they fear . Greimmar الإستنتاج MAKING DEDUCTIONS * يمكن استخدام بعض الأفعال الناقصة لعمل استنتاج أو احتمال سواء في المضارع أو الماضي لاست أنسه 1- Must + be + n. / adj. يعبر عن الاستنتاج المثبت القائم علي دليل في المضارع - He *must be* English. He speaks English well. (he is definitely English.) - You must be Adel. I met you at a language conference in Cairo years ago. (I'm sure you are Adel.) Must + inf. - You must speak good Arabic if you've lived here for 10 years. (I'm sure you speak good Arabic.) Mustماضى Must have + pp. تعبر (.Must have + pp) عن الاستنتاج المثبت القائم على دليل في الماضي - I hate snakes. A snake must have frightened me when I was I child. (A snake definitely frightened me when I was a child.) - Passing his driving test must have made Ahmed very happy. (I'm sure passing his driving test made Ahmed very happy.) 2- Can't / Couldn't + be + n. / adj. لا يمكن أن يكون يعبر عن الاستنتاج المنفي القائم علي دليل في المضارع - He can't be Egyptian He doesn't speak Arabic. (He is definitely not Arabic.) - That can't be Kamal. He looks too old. (I'm sure you are not Kamal.) Can't / Couldn'tماضى Can't / Couldn't have + pp. تعبر (.Can't / Couldn't have + pp) عن الاستنتاج المنفي القائم على دليل في الماضي - It's only 4 o'clock. The match can't have finished. it's too already. (The match definitely hasn't finished early) - Ali was not at the meeting. He can't have read my e-mail. (I'm sure he didn't read my e-mail.) - You couldn't have finished that book already. (I'm sure you didn't finish it.) 3- Might / may + be + n. / adj. من المحتمل للتعبير عن عدم التأكد في المضارع - He might be French, but he is probably Italian. (it is possible that he is French) - He might / may be at home. I'm not sure. Might / mayماضى Might / may have + pp. تعبر (.Can't / Couldn't have + pp) عن عدم التأكد في المأضى Azza wasn't at school yesterday. She might have had a doctor's appointment.. (It's possible that Azza had a doctor's appointment) - He might have rung yesterday evening. (It is possible but I am not sure.) - Going by car might have taken longer than going by train. (But it might not.) Phobias UNIT 15 (Workbook) 1 Match to make sentences. Listen to check your answers. a If you have a phobia. 1 a toy which looks like a baby or a small person **b** A doll is 2 do not like large parks. c People who are frightened of open spaces **3** you lose control of yourself. **d** You may feel dizzy 4 you feel very frightened of something. e If you panic, 5 if you turn round and round too many times. 2 Complete the sentences with prepositions. from of about over with a When I was younger, I often dreamtabout...... tunnels.

Hello English

Second Term

 b Some children are frightened the dark. c I don't like travelling on trains or buses which are full d My fear parties came my mother. e I've always been afraid birds. f My brother was born a fear g I really want to get my fear heights, but it is very h My aunt is afraid planes. She prefers to trave 3 Match the opposites. 	cats. difficult.
• •	1. aatab an illaaca
a panic	1 catch an illness
b get over an illness	2 lose control
c dizzy	3 light
d frightened	4 relaxed
e dark	5 stay calm
f take control	6 clear-headed
1 Write sentences using the word in brackets and on	
a Your neighbours are breaking one of their own window	s. (Iose key)
They must have lost their key.	
b A bus you are travelling on stops between two towns.	(has all down)
The driver tells all the passengers to get off and walk.	(break down)
c One of your school friends comes through the classroo	
hour later he/she comes in again and sits down.	(forget)
d One of your friends falls asleep during an English less	
lesson.	(have enough sleep)
2 Correct the spelling mistake in every line.	
I fly all over the world five or six times a moth and I don't	a)
like it much . I still get very nervious before I fly anywhere	
and I feel dizzy when the plane takes of and lands. I don	,
beleave people who say that they don't worry about flyin	
You have to feel a little frigtened when you get on to a	e)
machine which is heavyer than air and then goes up into	,
sky. On any other kind of trainsport, like a car, a train or	•
buss, you can get off, but if you are on a plane you can't	h)
go to the pilot and say, "Excuze me, I don't feel very well	,
Please well you stop the plane, I want to get off."	j)
3 Complete these sentences with words for people.	
a Atherapisthelpspatients with photo	
d A teaches in schools. e A	
CK Iranslati	on *)

A- Translate into Arabic:

1. Although women have gained many of their rights, they still have some demands to reach complete equality.

2. Technological advancement. It makes people's lives easier. Without the benefits of technology, the world would be a much harder place to live in.

3. Do you know how dangerous the stress can be? It affects us both physically and mentally. So, reducing stress is something that we should all try to do through some form of exercise.

4. International tourism is expected to grow in the future. It brings several advantages. First, tourism earns foreign currency for countries. Second, understand each other better.

5. English is an international language and millions of people are learning it all over the world. We learn language to be able to communicate with foreigners and to continue studies.

B) Translate into English:

1- من الضروري أن تجيد تحدث وكتابة اللغة الإنجليزية لكى تحصل على فرصة عمل.

(B) (B)

2- دانيال ديفو واحد من أشهر الروائيين في الأدب الإنجليزي.

3- لقد ساعد التقدم التكنولوجي الإنسان على إشباع كل أحتياجاته.

4- العمل الجاد يؤدي إلي النجاح

5- بعد أن قرأ الإعلان في المجلّة تقدم بطلب للوظيفة.

Hello English

Second Term





dam	ستد	enforcement	فرض - تنفيذ	criminal	مجــرم
channel	قنـــاة	conditions	ظروف - أحوال	serious	خطيــر
flood	فيضــان	result	نتيجـــة	pay a fine	يدفع غرامـــة
amount	کمیـــة	poverty	الفقر	freely	بحريـــة
electricity	كهربساء	crime	جريمـــة	hometown	مسقط رأس
enormous	ضخــم - هائل	particularly	خصوصا	the public	العامـــة
On the other hand	علي الجانب الآخر	robbery	سرقـــة	confident	واثـــق
lock	قِفل - يقفل	violent	عنيف	confident	ثقــــة
lift	مصعد	violence	عنےف	obey	يطيع
operate	يشغل	law	قانسون	reasonable	منطقي
territory	إقليـــم	efficient	كفء	acceptable	مقبــول
busy port	ميناء مزدحم	legal system	نظام قانوني	cruel	قاسي
trade centre	مركز تجاري	trial	محاكمة	according to	وفقا ا_
exports	صادرات	punishment	عقساب	strict	صارم - قاسي
shopping centre	مركز تجاري	fair	عــادل	judge	قاضىي
financial centre	مركز ماليي	harsh	قاسىي	guilty	مذنــب
enforce	يفرض - ينفذ	sentence	حكم قضائي	court	محكمـــة
		Definitie			

Definitions

enforce	to make people obey a rule or law	يفرض - ينفذ
enforcement	the act of making people obey a rule or law	فرض - تنفيذ
fair	reasonable and acceptable, according to what people usually think is right	عادل
harsh	unkind, cruel or strict	قاسي
law	the system of rules that people in a country or place must obey	
legal	allowed or done according to the law	
punishment	when someone is made to do something unpleasant, for example go to prison or made to pay money, because they have done something wrong or illegal	
sentence	a punishment that a judge gives to someone who is guilty of a crime	
serious	bad and worrying	
trial	a legal process in which a court of law decides whether or not someone is guilty of a crime	

🗧 Crifical Thinking 💥

- 1. Where is Hong Kong located?
- 2. What does Hong Kong consist of?

- It consists of Hong Kong Island , Lantau Island , Kowloon, The new territories and 236 other small islands

- It is located near the south east coast of China .

- 3. Who lived and worked in Hong Kong in the past?
 - Only fishermen and farmers lived in Hong Kong in the past .
- 4. How has Hong Kong changed today?
 - Today it is a busy port and an important financial and trade centre .

5. Why is Hong Kong important for China?

- Most of China's exports to other countries pass through Hong Kong .
- 6. What is Hong Kong known for? It is well known as a shopping centre and for its markets .
- 7. What do you know for Hong Kong's population and area?
 - It has a population of 7 million people in a land area of 1,100 sq km.

Hello English

8. How was Hong Kong from 1842 to 1997?	- It was a Briti	ish colony .
9. When did Hong Kong become part of China?	- In 1997.	
10. What languages do people in Hong Kong speak?		
 The most important two languages are Chinese and 	nd English.	
11. What is the currency of Hong Kong? - It is the state of the state	he Hong Kong dollar.	
12. Why is Hong Kong considered one of the greatest	cities in the world?	
- Because it is such a successful financial and trade		
13. Why is it surprising that Hong Kong has quiet park	ks?	
- Because it is densely-populated with limited land		
14. What happened to crime in the first half of the twe		land? - It rose quickly.
15. Why do laws have to be enforced in some countrie		
- To protect society from the increasing crimes and		
16. What does society need for successful law enforce		
- It needs honest police officers and an official legal		e punishment of crimes
must also be completely fair.	r bybtom. Thab and th	
17. Why are laws made?		
-They are made to stop people from behaving badly	v towards each other	
18. Where were some criminals sent to live?	y towards each other.	
- They were sent to live outside their countries to sp	and the rest of their li	ves away from their
families.		ves away nom men
19. What must a good law be?	lagal avatam in which	the public is confident
- A good law must be enforced by the police and a	0,	the public is confident.
REVIEW	E	
1 Finish the following dialogue:		
Zeinab a)Could you give me some advice	?	
Hal a Of course. What advice would you like?		
Zeinab b)	?	
Hala To revise for the English test, I'd read all your notes fi		
Zeinab Manal did a test yesterday. Do you think she read		
Hala c) She only got 10 out of 50. I'm		ext time
Zeinab d)		ext time.
Hala I get nervous about exams sometimes, but no, I don't		
2 Write what you would say in each of the following sit	•	
a An English friend wants to walk in the desert in August Y		a good idea. Civa
e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e		a good idea. Give
him/her advice.	d doop not arriva. Ca	why you think he didn't
b You arrange to meet two friends in the park but one frien	iu does not anive. Say	why you think he didn t
come.	a lia yay what the dat	
c Your school has the date 1969 above the door. A friend a	•	
d A friend asks you how to get to the swimming pool. There	e is a bus that goes th	iere.
3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:		
1 The playgroundby all the children in the		al ia vuaina
a used b is used	c is use	d is using
2 The man wrote this poem is from Alexand		
a what b which	c who	d whose
3 I can't remember how old I was when I first saw the Pyra		
a must be b might be	c can't have	d might have been
4 They are all wearing coats, so it cold when the		
a must be b must have been	c can't have been	d can be
5 This is the jacketmy grandmother made.		
a what b which	c who	d where
6 This house was builtHala's grandfather.		
a of b to	c with	d by
7 The dress is too long, so please can you it		
a short b shorter	c shortened	d shorten
8 At what time does the plane take?		
a up b on	c off	d of
9 The plane usually f lies at an of 7,000 metr	res.	
nenenenenenenenenenenenenenenenenenene	B B	ar 1 mar 1 Mar 1 mar 1

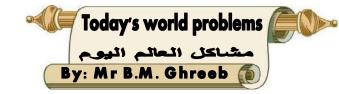
			16.16.16.16.16.16.16.16.16.16.16.16.16.1
First Year	Hello En	glish	Second Term
a altitude b l	nigh	c level	d up
10 His book first came		CIEVEI	dup
a in b continue canon b c		c up	d off
11 Mr Hassana lo		•	
	nissed	c caught	d left
12 Most people's phobias are	: there is no i	0	
· · ·	/irtual	c dizzy	d bare
4 Rewrite the following senter	ces using the wo	ord(s) in brackets,	to give the same meaning.
a Hamdi 's uncle started to contr	•		(take over)
b Mr Smith teaches us English a			(who)
c I was late because I did not ca			(miss)
d grandfather had flu last week,		covered yet	(get over)
e French engineer started the S			(by)
5 Find and correct the mistake My cousins will soon take part o			2
digital photographs. The course			a b
my cousins won't price anything			C
competition. The course is at the			0
They will miss a train to go there	, <u>,</u>		d
6 Read the following passage,			
••••••		-	buildings on it. It was built over the
			e this date, but these were made of
wood. It m1ght have been dange	erous to cross the	river at this time, be	ecause there were often fires on the
bridges.			
			62 buildings on it. Most of them are
			em are shops where you can buy
		n you walk across	it, you do not realise you are on a
bridge because you cannot see			
1 What is special about Kramerk		idao2	
2 Why do you think there were c3 What can you buy on the bridge		luge	
4 Why do you think the bridge is	•	etel	
5 They built the bridge of stone l		515:	
a it would not burn.		b wooden bridges	were not strong enough.
c it looked nicer.		d it stops you see	0 0
6 The underlined word them refe	ers to	1 5	5
a bridges b 6	62 buildings c high	walls	d amazing places
Answer only FOUR (4) of the f			
a Why was it very difficult to trav		0, ,	
b Do you think that it was very in			
c Why do you think that when th			e was not finished?
d How do we know that Fogg do	-		0
e Why did they miss their train to			12
f Why did it help them that they of 8 Answer the following questions:		alional Date Line?	
a What did Monks drop into the			
He dropped the gold ic		er	
b How did Oliver find Mr. Brown			
c How could Rose Maylie contac		eded information?	
d What is the real name of Morri		-	
e Why do you think Nancy cries	when she hears th	ne conversation betw	ween Fagin and Monks?
	about NINETY (90	0} words about so	mething you are frightened of:
10 a Translate into Arabic:			
1 They started building the first s			
2 The tourists must have come f	rom a cold count r	у.	
b Translate into English:			Plates to the till and the
			هل خرجوا إلي السوق مؤخرا؟

Hello English

Second Term



First Year



diversity	تنوع	polar bear	دب قطبی	process	عملية
biodiversity	<u>حرع</u> التنوع البيولوجي	survive	<u>ب</u> يبقى حيا		ضرر
species	، سوع ، بيو و بي جنس - فصيلة	terrible		increase	<u>سرر</u> یزید -زیادة
remote		ordinary	ر میب عادی	decrease	یرید -ریادہ یقلل - تخفیض
	بعيد منطقة				یعن - تحقیص متعلق ب
area		feed	يغذي - علف		
extinct	منقرض	patterns	أنماط - أشكال		يحقق
lose	يخسر	exist	يوجد	rainforest	غابة استوائية
appear	يظهر	produce	ينتــج	result	نتيجة كمية
disappear	يختفي	production	إنتاج	amount	کمیه
human	بشري	continue	يستمر	farming	زراعة
activity	نشاط	shortage : lack	نقص	acceptable	مقبول
matter	يهم	suitable	مناسب	purpose	غرض
role	دور	quarter	ربع	hinder	يعوق - يمنع
ecosystem	النظام البيئي	high-quality	عالي الجودة	furious	غاضب
ecology	علم البيئة	less-productive	اقل إُنتاجية	industry	صناعة
insect	حشرة	affect		industrial	صناعى
certain	مؤكد	store	يخزن - مُخزن		أساسى
get rid of	يتخلص من	desert areas	مناطق صحراوية	support	يؤيد ۔ يدعم
grow	يزرع ـ ينمو	turn into	يحول الي		برطمان
extinct	منقرض		زراعي		دو لاب
mean	يقصد - يعنى	agriculture	الزراعة	boil	يغلي
die out	ينقرض	reclaim	يستصلح	pot	وعآء
protect	يحمي	hectare	هکتار	pour	يصب
habitat	موطن	add	يضيف	spoil	يفسد
relation	علاقة	addition	إضافة	soft	۔ ناعم - لین مثــل
crops	محاصيــل	manage	يدير	such as : like	مثـــل
legal	قانونى	oasis	واحة	cucumbers	خيـــار
illegal	غير قانوني	oases	واحات	lettuce	خـــس
certain	محدد	raise	يربي - يرفع	particular	معيــــن
hunt	يصطاد	development	تطوير - تنمية	treat	يعامل - يعالج
hunter	صياد		يتخلص من	treatment	معاملة - علاج
climate change	التغير المناخى	natural	طبيعي	get over	يتغلب علي
threat	تهديد		بيئية	overcome	يتغلب علي
the Arctic	القطب الشمالي		بيئي	fertile	خصب
the Antarctic	القطب الجنوبي		يسبب	fertility	خصوب_ة

Expressions

make a suggestion	يقدم اقتراح	protectfrom	يحميمن
on the other side	علي الجانب الآخر	suitable for	مناسب ل
useful for	مفید لـ	shortage of	نقص في
in danger	في خطــر	answer to	إجابة لـ
cut down	يقطع	raise animals	يربي حيوانات
become worse	تزداد سوءا	do a project	يعمل مشروع
turn desert into	يحول الصحراء الي	on television	في التلفاز
die of	يموت بسبب مرض أو جوع	move out of	ينتقل بعيدا عن
die from	يموت بسبب حرق أو لدغـة	on the earth	علي كوكب الأرض

______S



Hello English

Second Term

Derivatives

Ver	b	Noun		Adjective	
		diversity	تنوع	diverse	متنوع
		extinction	انقراض	extinct	منقرض
disappear	يختفي	disappearance	اختفاء		
grow	يزرع - ينمو	growth	نمو	growing	نامي
mean	يقصد - يعني	mean	معنسي		
protect	يحمي	protection	حمايـــة	protected	
endanger	يعرض للخطر	danger	خطر	dangerous J	
threaten	يهدد	threat	تهديد	threatened	مهدد
survive	1.0	survival	البقاء علي قيد الحياة		
Survive	يبقي حيا	survivor	الناجي		
terrify	يرعب	terror	رعب	terrible	مرعب
exist	يوجد	existing	الوجود	وجــود existing	
reclaim	يستصلح	reclamation	استصلاح	reclaimed	
develop	يطور	development	تطور - تنمية	developed	متطور
produce	ينتج	production	انتاج	productive	إنتاجي - منتج

Definitions

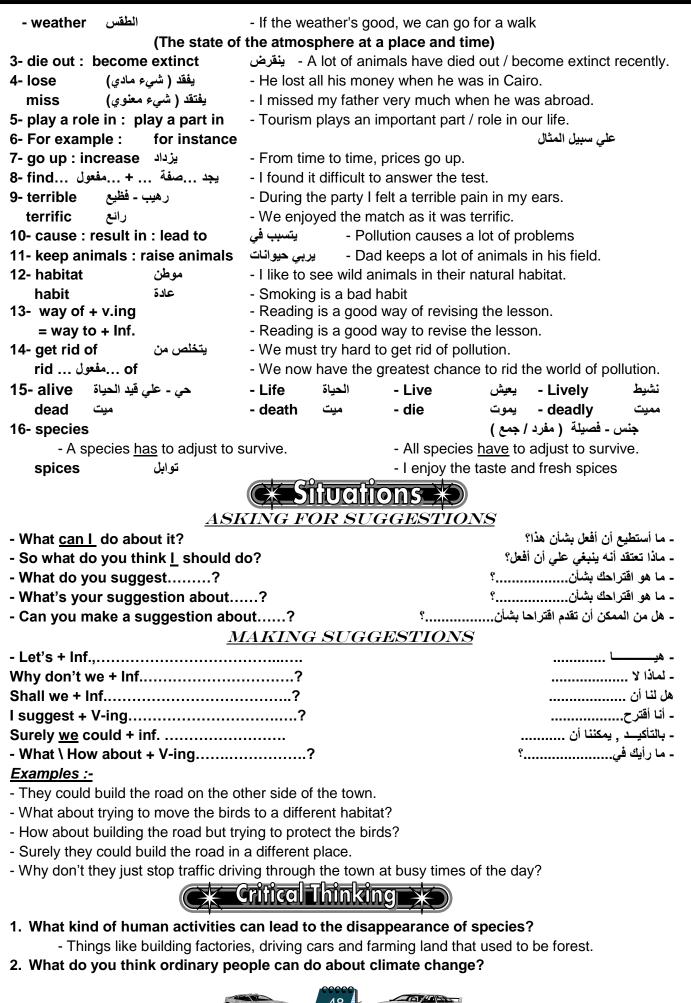
species	group of animals or plants of the same kind .	جنس - فصيلة
biodiversity	the number of types of plants and animals in an area	التنوع البيولوجي
ecosystem	the animals and plants in an area and their relation to each other.	النظام البيئي
get rid of	throw away, sell something so that you don't have it any more.	يتخلص من
extinct	describing an animal or plant that no longer exists.	منقرض
habitat	natural environment in which a plant or animal lives	موط_ن
climate change	changes to the weather patterns because of the increases of co2	التغير المناخي
threat	something that may cause damage to a person or a thing.	تهديد
survive	continue to live or exist in a difficult situation .	يبقي حيا
agricultural	related to the work of growing crops and keeping animals on farms.	زراعي
hectare	a unit of measuring an area of land , equal to 10-000 square metres.	هکتار
process	a series of things you do to achieve a particular result.	عملية
production	the process of making or growing things , or the amount that's produced	إنتاج
reclaim	make land useful for farming, building, etc.	يستصلح
store	to put things away and keep them until you need them	يخزن
suitable	right or acceptable for a particular purpose or situation.	مناسب

Language Notes

<u>1- The phrasal verb : "keep"</u>

- keep up wit	يساير - يجاري h	- It is important to keep up with	developments in technology.
		- We try to keep up with all the	changes in computer technology.
- keep on	يستمر في	- When you have exams, try to	keep on working hard.
		- Imad was very tired, but he ke	ept on running as fast as he could .
- keep out of	يبتعد عن	- When people argue, I always	try to keep out of the argument.
		- They're good girls who always	s try to keep out of trouble.
- keep off	يمنع – يبعد عن	- The mother told the small chil	d to keep off the flowers.
		- There's a large sign in the par	k which says, "Keep off the grass".
- keep up	يواظب	- keep in	يحتجز شخصا
2- climate	المناخ	- Egypt's climate is mild all the	year round.
(the w	eather conditions p	revailing in an area in general c	or over a long period)
			na ana ana ana ana ana ana ana ana ana

Hello English



Hello English

Second Term

- We can think about how much energy we use and where the energy comes from. 3. Do you think it is a good idea to reclaim land for farming? Why/Why not? - It is a good idea because the population will grow and we need more land to grow food. 4. Why is water so important? Think of its different uses. - Because we need water for cooking, washing, drinking, growing plants and for many industrial processes. Most importantly, it is essential to support all life forms. 5. Do you think people will move out of the cities to help produce more food? Why/Why not? - I think so. If they don't, they will die. 6. Is the desert or the land near the Nile more productive for farmers? - The land near the Nile is most productive. 7. Where has land been reclaimed from the sea? - In some countries such as the Netherlands. 8. Where can you store food in a kitchen? - You can store it in jars, in a cupboard, the fridge, etc. 9. What is the process you use to make tea? - First you boil some water. Then you put tea in a pot. Then you put the water on the tea and wait a little before you pour it. 10. Where do you think that scientists are discovering new species of animals and plants today? - In remote areas such as deserts and mountains and under the sea throughout the world. 11. Do you think that the Amazon rainforest will have disappeared in 200 years time? Why/Why not? - Yes, I do, because we are cutting down so many trees each year. - No, I don't. Some of the rainforest will be protected. 12. Do you think that many species of animals and plants will have disappeared by 2100? - Yes, I do because humans will continue to cut down trees and use land that they need. - No, I don't, because we understand the problems they have and will try to help the animals and plants. 13. Why are some people worried about biodiversity ? - Because we are losing species of plants and animals . 14. Why are many species of plants and animals disappearing? - Because of human activities. 15. What should we do to protect the habitats of animals ? - We must stop cutting down rainforests and we must making it illegal to hunt certain animals . 16. Which animal is being affected by climate change in the Arctic ? The polar bears . 17. How many people will have been on earth by 2050 ? - About nine billion people . 18. Will there be enough food for this huge number ? - I am not certain about that because the world population increases and the land decreases . 19. Why can't food production keep up with population growth? - Because there is a shortage of land, a shortage of water and the effect of climate change. 20. Why are there millions of people suffering from hunger in the world? - Because food is too expensive for them or it is in the wrong place or can't be stored for long. 21. How can we solve the problem of the shortage of agricultural land ? By reclaiming the desert and turning it into green land 22. What is desert reclamation ? - It is to turn desert land into agricultural land by making it suitable for farming. 23. How has Egypt increased food production ? - By reclaiming about 400,000 hectares now and 600,000 hectares in the next few years. 24. What can people do to help Egypt increase food production ? - They can move out of cities to work in agriculture . 25. How can people grow many crops in Abu Mingar oasis? - By managing water well and carefully 26. What hinders desert reclamation ? 27. - Lack of water. 28. Why can't we store vegetables and fruit for a long time? - Because most vegetables and fruits are soft so they spoil quickly such as cucumbers, lettuce and bananas .

First Year	Hello Engl	ish	Second Term			
	CK Craim	mer *)				
<i>Г</i>	THE FUTURE PER		uall			
		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	<u>الصعة</u> يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون			
The population of the	ہ می امسیعیں world will have grown to ab e					
	son, I will have practised us	•				
•	ed the English course in two	• •	L.			
•	r new house by April next ye					
			 يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون 			
- Before they come, we	e will have cleaned up the ho					
-	the whole cake, by the time t		arts			
			 _ يستخدم المستقبل التام مع تعبيرات ز 			
- In (a year's / four mo	onths' / five weeks' / an hour'	s / ten minutes' /) time			
_ • •	by next Monday/ by افى المر / by		,			
	four o'clock / tomorrow morr	-	etc)			
•	ow/ next Monday / next week	•				
	•					
•	I will have done a science te nty-two, I will have finished m					
•	y, I will have got a good job.	iy aniversity degree.				
- by the time rain time	(will have been + pp)	ا من	 يتكون المستقبل التام في المبنى للمجهو 			
- This school will have						
More Examples:-						
	opulation of Cairo will have bec	ome much biager.				
•	f water for growing crops will p	••	worse in 2050?			
- In 2018, Mona	will have lived in her house for	ten years.				
- By the end of the	nis year, that football player wil	I have played 100 mat	tches.			
UNIT 16	Today's world	nrohloms	(Workbook)			
1 Choose the correct v			(Workoook)			
	hen any animal becomes					
a extinct	b rid of.	c worse.	d alive.			
	those empty bottles in the					
a get over	b get off	c get rid of	d get rid			
-	in the Arctic.	- 301	- 3			
a alive	b die	c arrive	d survive			
	of plants living in the					
a spices	b type	c species	d ones			
•	he city, although it is not their u	-				
a habitat.	b habit.	c house	d hold.			
f After all that rain, there	is a real that the river	will flood.				
a treatment	b throw	c threat	d possible			
3 Use your dictionary	to answer these questions.					
a Extinct is the adjective	e. What is the noun? <i>Exti</i>	nction				
b Is the noun <i>species</i> si	ngular or plural?					
	c What is the difference in meaning between a <i>habitat</i> and a <i>habit?</i>					
	verbs to complete the senten					
	a In 2018, Mona will live / will have lived in her house for ten years.					
	r, that football player will play		0 matches.			
•	e/ will have lived in England n	•				
d By the end of the less	on, you <i>will all study</i> / <i>will all</i>	have studied the pre	sent perfect.			
	50					

Hello English

Second Term

e What will you do / will you have done w 3 Make sentences using the future perfect By the end of next year	ct, the words in brackets and your own ideas.
a (read/new books) I will have read f	five new books
b (take/English exams)	
c (visit/different towns)	
d (bought/new pairs of shoes)	
e (have/birthdays)	
1 Match the words a-e with their meaning	gs 1-5.
a process	1 make land useful for farming, building etc.
b productive	2 put somewhere to keep
c reclaim	3 right for a particular situation
d store	4 fertile
e suitable	5 things that you do or that happen to achieve a result
2 Answer these questions.	
a Is the desert or the land near the Nile mor	e productive for farmers?
The land near the Nile is more pro	oductive
${\bf b}$ Where has land been reclaimed from the	sea?
c Where can you store food in a kitchen?	
d Which books do you know that are suitable	le for small children?
e What is the process you use to make tea?	
1 Find and correct the mistakes in these	sentences.
a What can no one do about the problem of	climate change?
What can anyone do about the problem of	of climate change?
b Surely they stop factories producing so m	uch pollution?
c What about try to get people to drive elect	tric cars?
d Why don't they stopping so many people	driving to work?
e I don't know What do you think they shoul	d doing?

A- Translate into Arabic:

All Egyptians are proud of President Elsisi as he is great leader. He has done much for his country and the Arab Nation as whole. We still expected more and under his wise leadership.
 Some people prefer the simple and healthy life of the country. There, they enjoy the fresh air and throw themselves between the arms of nature.

(*_Iranslation_*)

3. Sports and games are of great value. They make our bodies strong and healthy. They can also build up our characters because they us how to be good citizens.

4. Success in life depends on patience and hard work. A pupil who starts learning his lessons from the beginning of the year will find difficulty in passing his examination.

5. Football is a very popular game in Egypt. People usually watch football matches on TV. Foot ball teaches us endurance, fair play and co -operation.

A- Translate into English:

1- يعتبر أجهزة الكمبيوتر في المدارس والمنازل والمصالح الحكومية ذات فائدة كبيرة.

2- لقد أصبح العالم قرية صغيرة، أخبارها متاحة، و ذلك نتيجة للثورة الهائلة في عالم الاتصالات

3- يجب حل المنازعات بين الدول بطرق سلمية

4- من عجائب الدنيا السبع منارة الإسكندرية وأهرامات الجيزة

5- السفر في الماضي كان صعبا للغاية

Hello English

Second Term





			-		
base	أســــاس	hound	کلب صید		يشــرح
decorate	يزيــــن		يـــرث	explanation	شــرح
landlady	صاحبة عقار	inheritance	ميــــراث	blame	يلوم
solve	يحـــل	heir	وريــــث	puzzle	لغسز
description	وصـــف	believe	يؤمــــن	puzzled	متحيـــر
museum	متحـــف	belief	إيمـــان	exchange	يستبـــدل
stealing	سرقــــة	wild	متوحــــش	take place	يحسدث
fictional	خيالــــي	hungry	جو عــــان	occur	تحسدث
physical	بدني ـ جسدي	hunger	جـــوع	surprised	مندهـــش
expression	تعبيــر	drown	يغـــرق	surprise	مفاجأة ـ دهشة
character	شخصية	footprints	آثار أقدام	based on	قائــــم علي
detective	مخبر سري	fingerprints	بصمـــات	resemble	يشبــــه
scene	مشهــــد	ordinary	عـــادى	take after	يشبـــــه
crime	جريمـــة	investigate	يتحري - يحقق في	look like	يشبـــــه
protect	يحمــــى	investigation	بحث - تحرى	pay for	يدفــــع
protection	حمايــــة	investigator	باحث ـ محقق	payment	دفــــع
study	حجرة دراسة	legend	خرافة ـ أسطورة	solve a crime	يحل لغز الجريمة
criminal	مجــرم	frightened	خائـــف	ask for	يظلم
mystery	لغز ـ غموض	worried	قلــــق	advice	نصيحــــة
mysterious	غامض	terrified	مرعوب	advise	ينصح
injury	إصابــــة	book fair	معرض الكتاب	situation	موقف
injured	مصـــاب	public park	حديقة عامة	care	عنايــــة
commit	يرتكب جريمة	enormous	ضخم ۔ هائل	careless	مهمــــل
fan	مشجع ـ مروحة	guess	يخمــــن	carelessness	إهمــــال
favourite	مفضــــل	feed	يطعــــم	take care	احتسرس
favour	معروف _ جميل	train	يتـــدرب	fault	خطأ
floor	طابــــق	bored	شاعر بالملل	promise	يعد - وعد
company	شركـــة	boring	ممـــل	expect	يتوقـــع
action	فعل _ حدث	boredom	ملـــل	wait	ينتظر
health care	رعاية صحية	opportunity	فرصــــة	commerce	تجـــارة
encourage	يشجـــع		نظام - انضباط	industry	صنـــاعة
realize	يـــدرك	misuse		agriculture	زراعــة
damage	تلف ـ خسارة	develop		blessing	نعمة
carry out	ينفذ - يحقق	development	تنميــــة	respect	يحترم - احترام
collapse	ينهــار	opponent	خ ِرِصْــــم	curse	لعنـــــة
-			/		1

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
believe	يعتقد / يصدق	belief	اعتقاد	believable	قابل للتصديق
decorate	يزين	decoration	زينة – زخرفة	decorative	مزينة
express	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر
inherit	يرث	Inheritance	إرث/ميراث	inherited	موروث
investigate	يتحرى / يحقق	investigations	تحريات		
Investigate	يسرى (يسل	investigator	محقق		
terrify	يخوف/يزعج	terror	رعب	terrifying	مفزع/مخيف





Hello English

Second Term

Definitions

based on	used particular information or facts as a point from which to develop an idea, plan, etc.	قائــم علي
crime	an illegal action that can be punished by law.	جريمة
decorate	to put new paint or paper on the walls of a room or building.	يزين
detective	a police officer whose job is to discover who committed a crime.	مخبر
fictional	from a book or story, not real	خيالـــي
landlady	a woman that you rent a room or house from.	صاحبة المنزل
scene	a short part of a play or film when the events happen in one place	مشهد/ منظر
expression	a look on someone's face	تعبيسر
face (n)	the front part of your head, where your eyes, nose and mouth are	وجـــه
hound	a dog used for hunting.	کلب صیـــد
inherit	to receive money, a house, etc. from someone who has died	يسرث
injury	physical harm that someone suffers in an accident or attack, or a particular example of this	إصابة
investigate	to try and find out about something, especially about a crime or accident	يتحري عن
legend	an old well-known story, often about the adventures of brave people and their actions and adventures	أسطورة / خرافة
physical	relating to someone's body rather than their mind	بدنيي
shoot	to kill or injure someone with a gun	يطلق الرصاص علي
solve	to find an answer to a problem.	يحل
terrified	very frightened	مرعـوب

Language Notes

1- Adjectives ending in (ed) & (ing) الصفات المنتهية ب ed تعبر غالبا عن أشخاص أما الصفات المنتهية ب ing تعبر عن أشياء - I'm very tired today. - Shopping is very tiring. - I'm interested in reading books. - I watched a very interesting film yesterday. ويمكن أن تأتى الصفة المنتهية ب (ing) مع العاقل إذا كان الشخص هو الذي يسبب هذه الصفة. He is boring. (It means that he causes boredom) 2- care for = look after یرعی / یعتنی ب (بشخص) Who will care for me when I am old? care for = want Do you care for a cup of tea? يريد care about something يهتم He doesn't care about his studies. Children should be trained in good manners. 3- train ... in درب على وظيفة + train as یتدرب ک She trained as a pilot. train for یتدرب ل (سباق) He spends two hours training for the race. 4- based in مقرہ فی His work is based in Egypt. based on قائم على It is a revision based on unit 18 5- view منظر من مكان محدد There was a beautiful view of the Ka'ba from our hotel. scenery منظر طبيعى (لا تعد) Lebanon is famous for its wonderful scenery. scene . police reached the scene of the crime at once مشهد ۔ مکان حدوث شیء (حادثة ۔ جریه حاسة الإبصار sight His sight is very poor معالم سياحية sights Tourists come to Egypt to see our sights. موقع أثرى / بناء site Abu Simble is the site of two temples south of Aswan. 6-lie یکذب یلیها حرف جر (to) lied Don't lie to me. lied lie lav lain ینام ۔ یرقد He has lain on the floor. تضع البيض يليها مفعول بدون حرف جر Hens lay eggs. lay laid laid 7-laugh يضحك (بدون مفعول) He laughed loudly. يسخر من شخص أو شئ laugh at

It is rude to laugh at people. يدفع لـ ثمن 8- pay for:

No one ever laughed at my jokes. - He pays his landlady for his flat every month.

Hello English Second Term First Ye<u>ar</u> 9- by law: بالقانون - A crime is an illegal action that can be punished by law. يحل (مشكلة / لغز) 10- solve: find an answer to - The police are still no nearer to solving the crime. 11- break into: - They broke into the bank yesterday. يقتحم 12- go up: - The old man can't go up to the third floor. يصعد 13- have a visit from: - We had a visit from the school inspector last week. لديه زيارة من 14- worried about: قلق على - She is worried about losing her job. 15- ask for: - He asked for his teacher's advice about the best study plan. 16- believe in: - Some people strongly believe in magic. يؤمن ب 17- responsible for مسئول عن - Paul is responsible for the efficient running of the office. Crifical Ininking 1- Who lives in the west of England? - Sir Henry Baskerville. 2- What does the Hound of the Baskervilles look like? - It is enormous and black. 3- Who is Stapleton? - He is a criminal and cousin of the Baskervilles. 4- What is the legend of the wild do in The Hound of the Baskervilles? - The legend says the dog will kill anyone called Baskerville. 5- Do you think Egyptians believe in legends? Name a legend that you have heard of. - Some might believe legends like the legend of the Bride عروس of the Nile, the legend of Osiris and Isis. Some are true, but made larger than like, like the legend of Abu Zaid Al Helali, Ra'fat El Hagan and Adham El Sharkawi. 6- Why do people like legends? - Because they are interesting and arouse their interest. 7- Where is Baskerville Hall? - In the west of England. 8- What is Sir Henry going to inherit? - He is going to inherit the family home, the Baskerville Hall. 9- How did Sir Charles Baskerville die? - He had no physical injuries, but he had died with a terrified expression on his face. 10- What did they find near the body of Sir Charles Baskerville? - They found the footprints of an enormous dog. 11- How did Stapleton's plan to kill Sir Henry Baskerville? - He trained a black dog to kill the first person it sees, he didn't feed the dog because he wanted to make it very hungry. 12- Why is the dog kept hungry in The Hound of Baskervilles? - So that it can attack the first person it sees. 13- How did Holmes and Watson solve the crime of Sir Charles Baskerville's murder? - They discovered that the criminal is called Stapleton, a cousin of the Baskervilles who wanted to inherit the family home. 14-Why do you think Dr Mortimer chose to ask Sherlock Holmes for help? - Because he was a clever detective. 15- Do you think Dr Mortimer is a good friend to Sir Henry? Why / Why not? - Yes, he is a good friend to Sir Henry because he was worried about him, so he asked Holmes to solve the mystery. 16-Do you think Stapleton's plan was a good one? Why / Why not? - It wasn't a good plan as he depended on an old legend about a wild dog and not all people believe in old legends, so Holmes and Watson were able to discover him and shot the dog before killing Sir Henry. 17-Where did Conan Doyle train to be a doctor? - He trained to be a doctor in Edinburgh University 18-Where did Conan Doyle work as a doctor? - He worked as a doctor in South Africa and other countries.

Hello English

لثة عشــــر	ater need f ould be m oor count do not ha many lives to be a do May be h ble in poor CFCCI E PASS	or doctors in ore success tries? ave even ve s. octor? e had seen countries w MINC SIVE V(SIVE V(th Africa a n Africa. Pe ful there. ery basic he many sick p here there for there of the of the for t	erhaps he wanted t ealth care. A few t beople and wanted were no / few docto were no / few docto	es instead of to help people rained people I to help them.
UNIT 17 Sher	lock	Holm	es	(Work	book)
1 Match the words a-e from with t hei	-				
a crime	1 not	real			
b decorate	2 one	e part of a bo	ook or film		
c detective	3 ste	aling and kil	ling are exa	amples of this	
d scene				o find criminals	
e solved		nt a room or			
f fictional	•	nd the answ	•	lem	
2 Complete these sentences with words				Jiem	
•			ing into the	dooort	
a The last scene in the f				uesen.	
b I want tomy bedroom, but I can't d			noose.		
c It is a to steal things from					
d Sherlock Holmes was a famous					
e Sherlock Holmes was, alt					
3 Match words from A and B to make	a pair of v	words that	go togethe	er.	
A climate detective fictional	land	physical	police	terrified	third
B change character expression	n floor	injury	lady	officer	story
a		e.			
b		f			
C					
d					
4 Make sentences.					
a Sherlock Holmes/Baker Street/Dr Wat					
Sherlock Holmes lived in Bake			son		
b Conan Doyle / based / detective /					
c millions / Sherlock Holmes fans / vis		•••	ear		
d Sherlock Holmes's / study / first floc	or /building				
e visitors / sit / Sherlock Holmes's / h	air				
1 Answer the questions using passiv	e verbs ar	nd the word	ls in brack	ets.	
a Who wrote the Sherlock Holmes storie	es?			(Sir Arthur Conan	n Dovle)
They were written by Sir Arthu	r Conan E	Dovle		,	
b When did they build the house in Bake		, ,		(1815)	
c How many people have visited the mu				(millions)	
		^ 2		(decorate)	
d Why can't visitors go to third floor of th	ie museull	1:		(uecolale)	
2 Rewrite the parts in brackets					
using passive verbs.					
Mustafa Are you OK! You look angry.					
Omar (Someone has stolen my car)	My car ha	as been stol	en		
Mustafa That's terrible. I'm sorry.					
Omar (They repaired it only last week.)					
		<u></u>			
	<u> </u>	5			
1997 (11 (000) 001 / 000 / 001 / 001 / 000 / 001 / 001 / 000 / 001 / 001 / 001 / 001 / 001 / 001 / 001 / 001 / 001 /	

Hello English

Second Term

Mustafa Where was it?					
Omar (They took it from my garage.)					
Mustafa What about the police!					
Omar (I told them immediately.) Mustafa Have they done anything yet?					
Omar (A detective interviewed me yesterday.)					
Mustafa Did he say anything?					
Omar (He doesn't think they'll find my car)					
3 Write five passive sentences using the words i					
a (Egypt / visit)Egypt is visited by thousands of to					
b (Pyramids / build)					
c (King Lear / write)					
d (Shakespeare / know)					
e (football / watch)					
1 Complete the puzzle.					
Across	Down				
1 He's got a smile on his	2 He has a happy on his face.				
6 You take this with a camera.	3 You do this with a gun.				
7 To try to find out about a crime.	4 the opposite of right (not left)				
9 a hunting dog	5 An old story that may be true.				
10 damage to your body	8 I may look 18, but I'm15.				
7 To get money and other things when someone die	S.				
2 Correct the facts in these sentences.					
a Dr Mortimer visits Sherlock Holmes because he ne	eeds money				
b Sir Henry Baskerville is going to investigate the far	mily home.				
c Sir Charles Baskerville was found in his bedroom.					
d Sir Charles Baskerville died with a surprised expre	ession on his face				
e Stapleton does not feed his dog to make it thirsty.					
f Stapleton is shot while he is trying to escape					
3 Make sentences. When do you	feel				
	b happy?				
	d surprised?				
	f worried?				
1 Read the story and discuss these questions in	pairs (there is a clue in the picture).				
Mystery in the living room					

Ali, Mohamed, Tito and Misho all live in the same flat. Ali and Mohamed go out to the cinema . When they return ' Tito is lying dead on the living room floor. There is water and broken glass next to him. Ali and Mohamed know that Misho must have killed Tito, but they do nothing. Why not?

A- Translate into Arabic:

1. Dr. Farouk El Baz has proved that the Egyptians can do wonders if they have the suitable opportunity. He has gained everyone's respect.

2. Industry, agriculture, commerce, and tourism are the backbone of our economy. Great projects are carried out to develop them.

3. We have to encourage our youth to go camping. It enables them to make use of their spare time in a useful way. It teaches them co-operation, discipline, and respect.

4. Money is a double- edged weapon. It can be a blessing and curse as well. It is a blessing if it is spent wisely .it is a curse if it is miss- used.

5. In order to achieve your goal in life you have to work hard. Don't waste your time. The time wasted can't be regained.

- COV 44 535-

B- Translate into English:

1- التكنولوجيا سلاح ذو حدين, فلها مميزات و عيوب.

2- بعض الناس ليديهم خوف مرضى من العناكب

3- ذهبت العام الماضي إلي معرض القاهرة الدولي للكتاب.

4- تعمل مصر من اجل السلام في الشرق الأوسط.

5- هوايتي المفضلة هي قراءة القصص البوليسية

Hello English

Second Term





6	شكل		مثل	audia nallutian	tr.
form noise pollution	سحن التلوث الضوضائي	such as : like bell	_	audio pollution visual pollution	تلوث سمعي تلوث بصري
define	يحدد - يعرف		جرس يضيء - يشعل		للوث بصري تلوث ضوئي
definition	يعدد - يعرف تعريف	warn of	يعدي و - ينتس	safe	ڪرڪ ڪريي آمن
simply	بيساطة	warning	ی <u>ت</u> ر تحذیر	safe	اس أمـــان
sound	بېنىڭ صوت - يېدو		<u>حدیر</u> خط_ر	come out	
loud	عالى الصوت	•	<u>حصر</u> يقبل		يظهر
loudly	عالي الطوف بصوت عالي	accept continuous	ي عبن مستمر	tower	بـــرج يرد - يستجيب
	بصوف عالي الفاية - بشدة		مستمر	respond to	*
extremely			مساعر شخصی	•	
annoying	مزعج	personal	-	bother	يضايق حديقة
mind	-	worry about	يقلق - قلق منظمـــة	park	
alarm	جهاز إنذار			guide	یرشد - مرشد
go off	ينطلق		رسمـــي	attract	يجذب
put up with	يتحمل - يطيق	decision	قرار	realize	يدرك
really	حقا	public	عـــام	scare	يخيف - يرعب
situation	موقف	services	خدمات	flag	علم - راية
stress	إجهاد - ضغط	damage	يتلف - تلف		تسليــة
level	مستوي	prevent	يمنع	jewels	مجوهرات
society	مجتمع	get worse	یزداد سوءا	press	يضغط علي
complain	يشكو	artificial	صناعي - مصطنع	vehicles	مركبات
complaint	شکوی	illuminate	ينير - يضيع	bottle	زجاجــة
probably		illumination	إنارة - إضاءة	jar	برطمان
common	شائع	leisure facilities	مرافق ترفيهية	piece	قطعـــة
neighbour	جار	shine	يضيء - يلمع	tin	علبسة
shout	يصيــح	area	منطقة - مساحة	honey	عسيل
horn	بوق - سارينة	get dark	يُظْلِم	pass	يمر - يمرر
burglar	لص	astronomer	عالم فلك	lake	بحيـرة
burglar alarm	إنذار ضد السرقة	astronomy	علم الفلك	pretty	جمیــل یعتذر
unwanted	غير مرغوب	nocturnal bird	طائر ليلي	apologise	يعتذر
reduce	يقلل	make sure	يتأكد	apology	اعتذار
law	قانون	equipment	معدات		یصطدم ب
enforce	يطبق - ينفذ	fight	قتال - شجار	data	بيانات
enforcement	تطبيق - تنفيذ		يمد ـ يزود		أزمـــة
land	يهبط	-	معين - محدد		أزمسات
take off	تقلع		غــرض		فرامسل
authorities	سألطات	bright	لامع - ساطع		حازم - صارم
somewhere	فی مکان ما	brightness	لمعان - سطوع		إجراءات
	- 2				•••

Expressions

complain about	یشکو من	shine down	ينير - يضيء لأسفل			
complain to	يشكو إلي	crash into	یصطدم ب			
complain of	يشكو من (مرض) - يعاني	at least	علي الأقل			
fly around	يطير حول	turn on : switch on	يفتح - يشغل جهاز - مصباح			
comes round	یزور شخص دون موعد	turn off : switch off	يغلق جهاز - مصباح			
problem with	مشكلة مع	impossible for	مستحيل علي			
shine up	ينير - يضيء لأعلي	lose his way	تؤمن حياتنا			

First Year Hello English Second Term made by nature من صنع الطبيعة brightly lit مضاءة بلمعان يخفض الصوت turns down threat to تهديد اـ keep us safe يعلى الصوت يجعلنا في أمان turn up Derivatives Verb Noun Adjective pollute pollution تلوث polluted ملوث يلوث annoy يزعج - يضايق annoyance annoying مزعج succeed success successful ناجح ينجح burgle burglary يسطو - يسرق منع - وقاية يمنع ينقذ prevented prevention أمان save safety safe ن ام إر هاق - تعب شديد exhaust exhaustion exhausted يرهق - يتعب مردف reduce يقلل reduction تخفيض - انتقاص مجهد stressful stress يؤكد على stress إجهاد - ضغط stressed ÷ يجذب attraction attract جذب attractive جذاب Definitions something such as a bell, loud noise, or light warning people of alarm جهاز إنذار danger accept a bad situation without complaining يتحمل put up with cause make something happen يتسبب في to become larger or to make something larger increase بز داد إجهاد - ضغط continuous feeling of worry about your work or your personal life stress burglar someone who goes into buildings in order to steal things. لص make a loud noise , start working. ينطلق go off the things in a car that you push to make a sound as a warning. horn بوق - سارينة organizations that make official decisions and control public authorities سلطات services. leisure buildings, equipment or services, provided for a particular purpose. مرافق ترفيهية facilities صناعي - مصطنع made by people artificial علماء الفلك people who study stars astronomers nocturnal come out at night ليلي

> to make light shine on something Language Notes

1- The phrasal verb : "keep"

يتخلص من

to stop something

something gets smaller

prevent

reduce

get up get rid of

illuminate

- It is important that Ali get up early in the morning because of his job. ينهض – يستيقظ - The neighbour also promised to get rid of the car if the problem continues.

يقلل

بنير

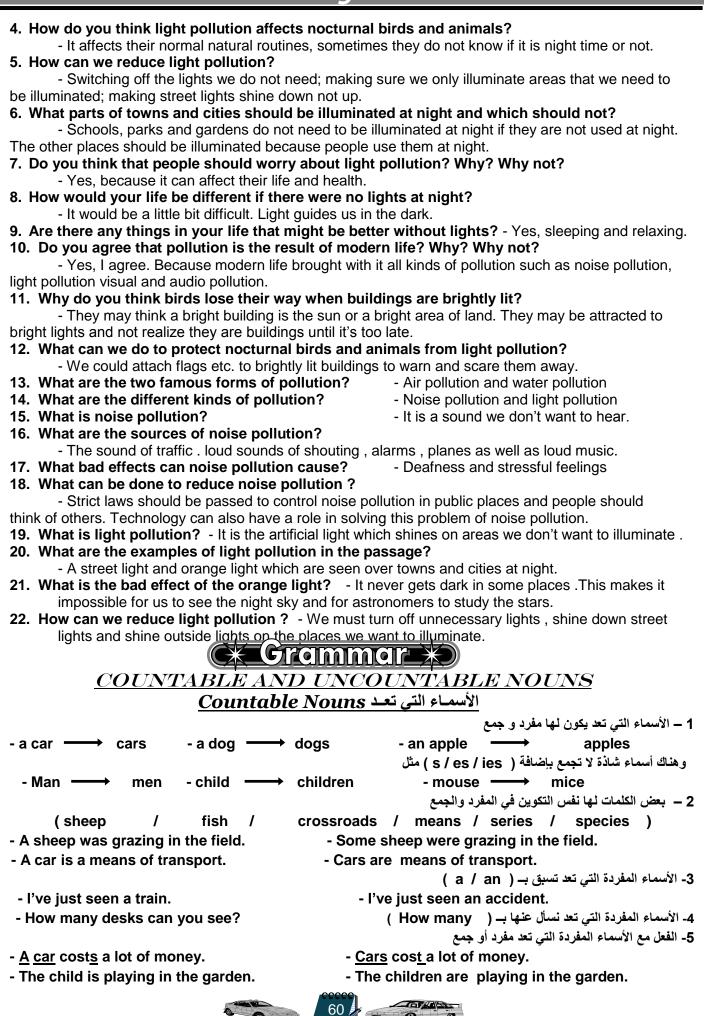
ىي ؟

get = catch get = hear get on	ق ب سىمع اصلة	یلح یرکب مو	- get = buy - get over - get off	، علي	يشتري يشفي من - يتغلب ينزل
get through = pass	بنجح		- get on with		ينسجم مع
2- accept		- expe	يتوقع Ct	- except	ما عدا
3- steal	ل (فعل لازم)	يسرو	- People who steal must	pe punished.	
steal	يسرق (شيء)		- He stole a lot of money	from the bank.	
rob	شخص مكان)	يسرق (- A group of thieves robb	ed the bank.	
I- succeed in + v.in	g / noun	ينجح في	- She succeeded in solvir	ng all her problems.	
manage to + inf.	يتمكن من		- She managed to solve a	all her problems.	
. مفعول Frovide -5	with	یمد ب	- Schools provide studen	ts with books.	

Hello English

Schools provide books for students - يوفر لـ for … مفعول for			
6- bell جرس - I rang the bell three times but no one answered.			
bill فاتورة - He has to pay a bill of hundreds of dollars			
pill - He was ill and was advised to take some pills.			
illuminate : light (up) بنير - A flash of lightning وميض برق illuminate : يضيء - ينير (up) - معنىء - ينير			
eliminate يمحو - يقضي علي - The government tries hard to eliminate illiteracy. 8- light lit lit يضيء - ينير - The room was lit by a number of small lamps			
8- light lit lit يضيء - ينير - The room was lit by a number of small lamps light lighted lighted يضيء - ينير - The room was lighted by a number of small lamps			
الاستخدام السببي (تعني أن الفاعل متسبب في الحدث فقط و ليس هو الفاعل الحقيقي)			
- Sami had his car mended yesterday.			
- He had mended his car.			
یشکو ۔ یقدم شکّوی 🕺 👘 10- complain : make a complaint			
- They complained that they didn't have enough money.			
- They made a complaint that they didn't have enough money.			
11- piece - She had a piece of cake before she went out.			
- Most people like peace and hate war.			
منجم - astrologer منجم 12- astronomer			
What time did you get home? (لا تسبق بحرف جر إذا جاء قبلها فعل دال علي الحركة)			
C* Situations *)			
MAKING COMPLAINTS AND POLITE RESPONSE			
<u> الاستانية والأجزاء الموضوع تحتها خط للتعبير عن الشكوى و كيفية الرد عليها بطريقة مهذبة :- الاستانية والأجزاء الموضوع تحتها خط للتعبير عن الشكوى و كيفية الرد عليها بطريقة مهذبة :- الاستانية والأجزاء الموضوع تحتها خط للتعبير عن الشكوى و كيفية الرد عليها بطريقة مهذبة :- الاستانية و الأجزاء الموضوع تحتها خط للتعبير عن الشكوى و كيفية الرد عليها بطريقة مهذبة :- الاستانية و الأجزاء الموضوع تحتها خط للتعبير عن الشكوى و كيفية الرد عليها بطريقة مهذبة :- الديمانية الموضوع تحتها خط للتعبير عن الشكوى و كيفية الرد عليها بطريقة مهذبة :- الديمانية الموضوع تحتها خط للتعبير عن الشكوى و كيفية الرد عليها بطريقة مهذبة :- الديمانية الموضوع تحتها خط للتعبير عن الشكوى و كيفية الرد عليها بطريقة مهذبة :- الموضوع تحتها خط للتعبير عن الشكوى و كيفية الرد عليها بطريقة مهذبة :- الديمانية الموضوع الموضوع تحتها خط للتعبير عن الشكوى و كيفية الرد عليها بطريقة مهذبة :- الموضوع الموضوع تحتها خط للتعبير عن الشكوى و كيفية الرد عليها بطريقة مهذبة :- الموضوع الموضوع تحتها خط للتعبير عن الشكوى و كيفية الرد عليها بطريقة مونية :- الموضوع الموضوع تحتها خط للتعبير عن الشكوى و كيفية الرد عليها بطريقة موضوع :- الشكون و كيفية الموضوع :</u>			
ادرش المحادثات الثانية والإجراع الموضوع تعليه خط تشتبين عن المتلوي و دينية الرد عليها بطريفة مهابة Narrator: 1			
Mr. Zaher: Good evening, Mr. Latif. <i>I'm sorry to bother you, but</i> my wife and I are watching television			
and we can hear your music very clearly. It's quite late and it's very loud.			
Mr. Latif: It's my son. He enjoys listening to loud music. I do apologise. I'll make sure he turns it down.			
Mr. Zaher: <u>That's very good of you.</u> Mr. Latif. That's very good of you.			
Mr. Latif: <u>That's no problem. I'm sorry you had to come round.</u> Narrator: 2			
Assistant: Good morning. Can I help you, madam?			
Customer: Yes, <u>I'd like to make a complaint.</u> I bought this radio here yesterday and it's stopped			
working already.			
Assistant: Perhaps you dropped it.			
Customer: No, I didn't. I tried to turn it on this morning and nothing happened.			
Assistant: Have you tried changing the batteries?			
Customer: There's nothing wrong with the batteries. Assistant: Are you sure?			
Customer : Yes, I am. Look, perhaps I could speak to the manager about this.			
Assistant: I'm afraid he's out at the moment.			
Customer: Then I'll wait until he comes back.			
- Write what you would say in the following situations.			
a Your neighbour's car alarm is going off. You visit their flat to tell them.			
<i>I'm sorry to bother you, but ! your car alarm is going off.</i> b You bought a CD from a shop and it is damaged. You want to complain to the shop assistant			
c Your forgot to return a book that you borrowed from a friend. He comes round to your house to get it			
d You are in a shop and you knock over a glass and it breaks. You see the shop assistant			
1. What is light pollution?			
- It is when artificial light shines on areas that we do not want to illuminate.			
2. Give examples of light pollution?			
 Artificial lights in our homes, street lights which shines into someone's bedroom window and the orange light which can be seen over towns and cities at night. 			
3. What is the problem with the orange light over towns and cities?			
- The light stops us from seeing the night sky and stops astronomers from studying the stars.			
Besides, this orange light can affect the lives of nocturnal birds and animals.			
en e			

Hello English



Hello English

Second Term

6- الضمير المستخدم بدلا من الأسماء المغردة التي تعد مفرد أو جمع و صفة الإشارة مفرد أو جمع (this – that – these – those) - I can't buy this book as it is expensive. - I can't buy these cars as they are expensive. 7- تُستخدم الأسماء التي تُعد أيضا مع الكلمات الآتية (some / any / many / a few / a lot of one / two / three, etc.) - Were there any mistakes in your homework? - Some children are having a picnic in the park. الأسماء التي لا تعد Uncountable Nouns 1 – الأسماء التي لا تعد دائما مفرد و ليس لها جمع news - information - oil- advice -water - money - music - bread - luggage - baggage - cloth.... ** تشمل الأسماء التي لا تعد الآتي : الأنشطة اللغات Languages اللغات English – Arabic 2 - Activities reading - studying الوجبات 3- Meals breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper 4- Abstract nouns:- honesty - أمانة hope - beauty - help- love – hatred كراهية – ثقة confidence etc. معبر peace صبر peace دليل evidence مقدم poverty – شجاعة courage - معبر evidence – معامة courage 5 - Materials أسماء المواد عندما تستخدم بوجه عام coffee - glass - gold - iron - lime - paper - stone - sand - soil - sugar- tea - wood etc. 6 - School subjects history - physics 7 - Fluids السوائل water - coffee - oil الرياضة Sports الرياضة football - volleyball 2- الأسماء المفردة التي لا تعد لا تسبق ب (a / an) إنما يمكن تسبق ب (some – any) - We don't have any butter. - Would you like some more tea? 3- بعض الكلمات التي لا تُعد يمكن أن تسبقها الأداة (a/an) إذا جاءت قبلها الصفة: - We had a *delicious* breakfast. - I spent a nice time on the beach. - How much meat did you eat for lunch. 4- الأسماء المفردة التي لا تعد نسأل عنها ب (How much) 5- الفعل مع الأسماء المفردة التي لا تعد مفرد دائما - Money doesn't always bring happiness. - Meat costs much money 6- الضمير المستخدم بدلا من الأسماء المغردة التي لا تعد مفرد دائما و صفة الإشارة مفرد دائما (this - that) - This milk is too hot , so I can't drink it. 7- تُستخدم الأسماء التي لا تُعد أيضا مع الكلمات الآتية (some / any / much / a little / a lot of) - We don't have much time left. - He has got a lot of money. **** ملحوظة هامة : يمكن تحويل الأسماء التي لا تعد إلى أسماء تعد كالآتي 1-استخدام ألفاظ تجزئة تشير إلى كميات محددة مثل : شريحة لحم A sheet of paper فرخ ورق A slice of meat قطرة ماء رغيف خبز A loaf of bread A drop of water أنبوبة معجون أسنان کیس دقیق A tube of toothpaste A bag of flour علبة كبريت حبة رمل A box of matches A grain of sand علبة سجائر ملئ ملعقة شاى A spoonful of sugar A packet of **cigarettes** زجاجة حليب A glass of lemonade كوب ليموناده A bottle of **milk** A jar of jam برطمان مربة قطعة صابون A bar of soup 2- اذا تغير معناها 1- Do you like chicken? (chicken meat الفراخ) Do you like chickens? (الفراخ the animals) 2- I'd like some writing paper. (ورق الكتابة - لا يعد) I'm going to buy a paper. (a newspaper) 3-The window's made of unbreakable glass. (الزجاج - لا يعد) of water? کوب Would you like a glass (برتقالة the fruit) 4- Would you like an orange? (اللون البرتقالي (اللون البرتقالي (I don't like orange. I prefer red. 5- Would you like a coffee? (فنجان قهوة a cup of coffee) Coffee can you stop you sleeping. (مشروب القهوة The drink) 6- I've got a hair in my mouth. (شعرة a single hair) There's hair on the floor. (a lot of hair شعر) • بعض الكلمات ليس لها مفرد وتعامل معاملة الجمع ومنها - الأشياء التي تتكون من نصفين مثل gloves / shorts / spectacles / trousers 1 glasses 1 pyjamas

First Year	Hello Eng	glish	Second Term
gloves / scis نستخدم معها كلمة pair	ssors / trousers / s	hoes / socks glas	 أسماء الأشياء المكونة من جزأين مثل ses وبدون كلمة pair تُعتبر هذه الكلمات جمع
- His trousers are dirty.	- A naiı	of socks doesn't o	•
<u>3- Nouns and noun phrases</u>	•		sost much money.
			 معظم الأسماء التي تُشير إلى مجموعات يمكن
army شرکة army	ب ب جیش	فصل class	فريق team
		عدة نستخدم فعل مفرد	 عندما نفكر في المجموعة ككل أي كوحدة واد
- The Egyptian team <u>is</u> going t	o play the final .		هنا الكلام عن الفريق كوحدة واحدة
		•	 عندما نفكر في أعضاء المجموعة كأفراد نست
- The Egyptian team <u>are</u> going		next week.	هنا نقصد الفريق كأفراد
4- Nouns which look plural:		7. 11 . ÷ti . +ti	TH NEW N TON 10 THAN 611 NO
•			 العبارات الدالة على الكمية و المبالغ المالية و محمد برمير ماللة الم
 Ten million pounds is a lot of Five kilometres is a long way 	•	- Fifty litres of petr	-
- Two hours is a long time to w	•	legrees is a very h	•
-	•	• •	 الضمائر الغير محددة التالية تأخذ دائما فعل م
ح / someone / no one / nobody /			
- Somebody has cleaned the h			
- Someone is knocking at the			weis.
	· •		• الضمائر الغير محددة التالية تأخذ دائما فعل م
 (something / nothing / anythi	,		has fallen on your head.
UNIT 18	A cleane		(Workbook)
			(WOI ROOOR)
1 Complete these sentences w alarm authorities bu	/ith the correct wo Jrglars cause	ras. horn	increase stress
a The burglars took the jewels fr	•		
b He thinks the should	•		•
c Cars both air and ne			
d I think that cars should not pre			
e The teacher is very happy becapassed the test.	ause there has bee	n an in the	e number of students who have
f Students often feel	when they have ex	ams.	
2 Complete the sentences with			
get rid of get up		goes off	put up with
a It is important that Ali gets			
b All does not usually sleep very the night.	well because his h	eignbour's car alarm	oftenin the middle of
c His neighbour has asked him t	o the pro	oblem until his car al	arm is mended
d The neighbour also promised t			
3 Answer these questions.			
a What do you think is the worst		ution?	
b What vehicles or buildings ofte		1 00	
c What do you find difficult to pur4 Write a paragraph about the			ry day.
1 Find and correct the mistake			ly day.
a The two forms of pollution peo	ple worry about is a	ir and water pollution	า
The two forms of pollut			
b Plants need lights from the sur			
 d How many money have you go 2 Choose the correct words to 			does that machine make?
a I'd like two cups of A coffee			
b There's A a little B a few	· · ·		get some morel
		nat they could not he	
d Be careful that you don't cut you			s on the floor
e The a1r 1n the mountains A	IS B are alway	ys so trèsh.	
	62		
			re vone vone vone vone vone vone vone von

Hello English

Second Term

f Please can you pass me A <i>a</i> B 3 Complete with the correct words.	some paper!		
bottle jar	piece	tins	some
a His grandmother always drinks a cu	•		
b Would you like sugar with			
c How manyof vegetables do y	•		
d Can you pass me the of			
e I'm not very hungry because I've just e			
f Don't forget to buy a of c	ola from the shops.		
Rewrite the sentences using the word	Is in brackets to give the s	ame meanin	g.
a The lake is very pretty, but it was made			-
The lake is very pretty, but it is	s artificial		
b The police stopped the men from goin			
c They plan to make smaller the number	r of cars going into the city ce	entre each da	ay. (reduce)
d That school needs some lights to mak	e the playground lighter at ni	ght.	(illuminate)
e This is a bird that only comes out at nig			(nocturnal)
2 Match to make sentences and comp	plete with the correct form	of <i>get.</i>	
a What time does it	1 your		er birthday!
b His father usually	2 tomo		
c She went to the shops and	3 dark		
d Which bus are you going	4 hom		
e What have you	5 som	e bread and i	milk.
3 Write a paragraph about a place wit			
1 Put the conversation in the correct			
a () Shop assistant What's the problem			
b () Shop assistant I do apologise, b	•		
c () Hatem I'm sorry to bother you, bu			
d () Hatem Well, I'd like to make a co	•	0	Ν.
e () Hatem That's not possible. Look,			
f () Shop assistant Our new shirts d	lon't have holes in them, sir.	Perhaps it ha	appened after
you took it home.			
g () Hatem When I put it on, I found the			
2 Write what you would say in the foll			
a You r neighbour's car alarm is going of		em.	
I'm sorry to bother you, but ! your car		nlain ta tha a	han aggistant
b You bought a CD from a shop and it is	•	•	•
c Your forgot to return a book you borrow			
d You are in a shop and you knock over			3551510111
<u>A- Translate into Arabic:</u>	Translation *	\mathbf{O}	
1. It has become clear that great	efforts are necessary to	o provide e	nough food, housing
education, medical assistance and jo	bs for the ever-increasing	population i	n Egypt.
2. To bring up a child is a very com	•		•••
good qualities in order to become goo			agin ap non and navo
		ima wa cha	ll be corry in future
3. We should make good use of the s		-	•
4. Some scientists believe that the	-		t tew it people go on
increasing in number. We should try t	• •		
5. All the members of a family sh	nould participate to make	e their hom	e clean, healthy and
comfortable. Each member should we	ork for the good of the who	ole.	

B- Translate into English:

1- تنفذ الكثير من المشروعات الزراعية والصناعية في صعيد مصر لتوفير فرص أفضل للعمل للمواطنين هناك.

63

إن مشكلة الانفجار السكاني هي اخطر مشكلة تواجه العلماء في الوقت الحالي.

3- إن تقدم أي دولة يعتمد علي شبابها والخدمات التي يؤدينها لبلادهم.

4- يعطينا السلام فرصة ذهبية لتنفيذ مشروعات مفيدة

5- الكون ملئ بالأسرار والعجائب

Hello English

Second Term





interview	يجري مقابلة مع	recycling	إعادة تصنيع/ تدوير	higher education	التعليم العالي
wake up	يستيقظ	recycling centre	مركز إعادة التدوير	aged	بالغ من العمر
nature	الطبيعة	waste	يضيع - يهدر	pay for	يدفع ثمن
blow	تهب (رياح)	waste	مخلفات	throw away	يتخلص من
planet	کو کـــب	get about	يتنقل - يتجول	remove	يزيل
cause damage	يسبب ضررا	follow	يتبسع	educated	متعلم
low-energy	منخفض الطاقة	mostly	في الغالب	political	سياسى
light bulbs	لمبات كهربية	lawyer	محامسي	effective	فعال
warm water	مياه دافئة	opportunity	فرصـــة	standard	مستوي
get rid of	يتخلص من	reform	إصـــلاح	knowledge	معرفية
as well as	و كذلـــك	improvement	تطور - تحسين	chance	فرصـــة
sheet of paper	فرخورق	public education	التعليم العام	makes sound	يصدر صوتا
printer	طابعــة	compulsory	إجباري - إلزامي	say words	يقول كلمات
charity	مؤسسة خيرية	free	مجانسي	tell news	يقول أخبارا
recycle	يعيد تصنيع	equal	متساوي	go shopping	يذهب للتسوق

Definitions

cause	made to happen	يسبب
survive	continues to live/exist after a difficult or dangerous situation	يبقي حيا - ينجو
increase	to become larger	يزداد
climate	weather conditions in an area	المنساخ
throw away	remove something because you don't want it	يتخلص من
extinct	no longer existing/living	منقرض
compulsory	must be done because of a rule or law	إلزامي - إجباري
educated	an educated person has a high standard of knowledge and	متعليم
educaled	education	
equal	the same in size, value, amount, etc.	متسـاوي
improvement	when something becomes better than it was	تحسين - تطوير
opportunity	a chance to do something	فرصـــة
reform	a change that is made to a political or legal system in order to	
	make it fairer or more effective	إصبارح
take for granted	to believe that something is true without making sure	يسلم بوجود شيء

🖌 Critical Thinking 💥

1. Why are forests cut down?

- So that farmers can have more land to grow food for the world's increasing population.

2. How can we make sure our planet survives?

- Firstly, we should use less energy . Next, we should think about what we use and what we get rid of. Finally, we should think about how we travel.

3. 3- How can we save energy\ use less energy?

- By switching off all the lights we don't need. We can also use low-energy light bulbs.

4. 4- How can we slow climate change?

5. 5- How can we save money and the environment?

- By using both sides of sheets of paper in a computer printer. Give your old mobile to charity to recycle it. Take newspapers, bottles and tins to a recycling centre.

- By reducing pollution.

6. 1- What kind of work did educated people do in the past? - They were lawyers or doctors.

Hello English

7. 2- At what age does compulsory education usually begin?				
•	- It usually starts between the ages of 4 and 6.			
8. 3- Which five school subjects are most important today?				
•	• •	s, science and technology.		
9. 4- How has educat	ion for people over 18	and over changed in mo	dern times?	
 Students aged 	d 18 and over now go to	university.		
10. 5- What did girls home.	learn in the past?	- They learne	d to cook and look after the	
-		work at a very young age	?	
•	did not have the opportu			
12. 7- For whom is c	ompulsory education?		ywhere.	
		EVIEW F		
1 Finish the following	-			
Man I'm sorry to bothe Hotel office What's the	r you. but 1)… I'd like to e problem?	o make a complaint		
Man The window in my	room won't close.			
Hotel office 2)	I'll ask s	someone to repair it for you	u this afternoon.	
Man 3)		?		
Hotel office OK, I'll se	e if someone can visit yo	our room now.		
		it? I'd like to go out in thirty	/ minutes.	
Hotel office 2)		?		
Man Before I go out? 7	Thank you.			
2 Write what you wou	lld say in each of the fo	ollowing situations:		
a Some new friends ph	none you to say that they	can't find your house and	they don't know where	
they are. Ask your mot	her for advice.			
b A person phones you	u and asks to speak to ye	our father He is not here.		
c Your cousins phone	you and say that they ha	ve missed the train to Cair	o. Suggest the bus.	
d You make a complai	nt at a shop but the assis	stant cannot help you. You	want to speak to the manager.	
3 Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or	d:		
1 The computers	used by all the chi	ldren in the school.		
a will	b will be	c will have	d have	
2 Mona can't play tenn	is at 9.30 because she v	von'ther homew	vork by then.	
a have finished	b be finished	c finished	d finishing	
3 The museum	visited by thousands	s of people this year.		
a was been	b has been	c has	d have	
4 You can't use classro	oom 2 because it	redecorated.		
a is being	b being	c was been	d will have	
5 Magda does not like	airports because there is	s always a lot of		
a noises	b noise	c a noise	d the noise	
• • •	pe have light brown			
a hairs	b hair	c hairy	d the hairs	
7 Please can you go to	the shops and buy a	of honey.		
a piece	b cup	c jar	d plate	
8 The story is not real,				
a fact	b fax	c financial	d fictional	
9 The baby has a very	happy on his			
a ecosystem	b expression	c emotions	d effect	
	owards me, I felt			
a terrified	b annoying	c compulsory	d cracked	
	66666			
1997 (1999 (1999 (1999 (1999 (1999 (1999 (1999 (1999 (1999 (1999 (1999 (1999 (1999 (1999 (1999 (1999 (1999 (19		65		

Hello English Second Term First Year 11 Some animals are, so you only see them at night. **b** national **a** naughty c nocturnal d miserable **12** There are very good leisurein my city, so I am never bored. **a** facilities **b** guides **c** hectares d horns 4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets, to give the same meaning. 1My sister walks so quickly that I cannot walk as quickly as her. (keep up with) **2 Don'** alk on the grass in the park. (keep off) 3 I a e t when I hear alarms at night. (go off) 4 A hat time does your train arrive in Cairo? (get) 5 Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences: **1** The story is about a criminal that happened in London 100 years ago. **2** An important machine was given from a factory. 3 The owner of the factory asked an astronomer to find who had taken it. 4 The fiction who took the machine was found and sent to prison. 6 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: Does the sound of an insect in your room bother you? There are more than 900,000 kinds of insects, but scientists think that only about 80 percent of the world's species have been studied. In the future, we will probably find many more. So before you get rid of that annoying insect in your room, remember that they can play an important part in our ecosystem. They help plants to grow, they remove natural rubbish and they are food for many birds and animals. Some scientists think that insects are healthy to eat They think that more and more people will have started to eat insects by the time your grandchildren are adults. Some insects are annoying and some are dangerous, but other insects may be more useful than you realize! 1 What percent of insect species do scientists not know about? 2 What will scientists study more of in the future? 3 In what ways can insects help the ecosystem? 4 Why do you think people might eat insects in the future? 5 What do many people do with insects that are annoying? a They get rid of them. **b** They eat them. c They put them in a room . **d** They give them to their grandchildren 6 When do some scientists think that more people will eat insects? a in about ten years **b** in about 20 years c in about 60-70 years d in about 200 years 7 Answer only FOUR (4) of the following questions: a What will happen to Baskerville Hall if all the Baskervilles die **b** What has killed members of the Baskerville family in the past? c Why do you think Sherlock Holmes becomes interested in Dr Mortimer's story? d Do you think it is possible to train a dog like Stapleton did in the story? e Do you think that Holmes and Watson were right to shoot the dog? f How do you think that Holmes knew about Stapleton 's plan? 8 Answer the following questions: "This is not true I" cried Monks. "I do not have a brother." a Who is Monks talking to? **b** Who is Monks's brother' c What kind of person is Monks' How do we know this7 9 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to a scientist about pollution in your city or village: 10 a Translate into Arabic: 1 Some airports reduce the number of planes taking off at night 2 The email will be sent tomorrow morning. **b** Translate into English: يعاقب الصبي على إهماله

Hello English

Second Term

Tape Script

Unit 10

Grandfather: What are you doing, Hatem?

Hatem: I'm just going to send a message to one of my friends, Munir.

Grandfather : How are you doing that?

Hatem: On one of the social networking sites where you can send messages to your friends and make new friends. Munir lives in Luxor.

Grandfather : Luxor? How long does the message take?

Hatem: He'll get the message immediately. You can also do it on your mobile phone if you've got a modern one.

Mother: How do you make new friends on a computer?

Hatem: It's quite easy, really, Mum. You find people who have the same interests as you and you ask them to be your friend. Most people have about I30 friends. I have about 80. I think I'll have more friends after I start going to the sports club next week.

Grandfather : 80? That's amazing.

Hatem: I even have three friends in England, so I can practise my English when I write to them **Mother**: And do you meet all these friends?

Hatem: Not always, usually I just send them messages. But I'm going to meet one of my English friends. He's going to visit Cairo next year.

Mother: Are social networking sites just for young people and their friends?

Hatem: No, millions of businesses are using them to advertise jobs. My friend's older brother has seen a job online and he is going to apply for it using social media.

Mother: It sounds very complicated.

Hatem: It isn't complicated, but you can waste a lot of time. Some of my friends are on it for two or three hours a day, sometimes writing their blog.

Grandfather : What's a blog?

Hatem: It's a web page where you can write about your life and your interests, or information about a particular subject. You can update it whenever you want to, and the newest information is always at the top of the page. Other people can read what you've written and make comments.

Grandfather: Do you write a blog?

Hatem: Yes, every day, because I want to share my interests with other people. It's like being a journalist.

Grandfather: Will anyone read your blog?

Hatem: Yes, about 200 people will read it. Anyway, why did you ask me if I was busy, Granddad?

Grandfather: Could you post this letter for me? It's to my friend who lives in Saudi Arabia.

Hatem: Yes, of course. I'll post your letter now. I haven't posted a letter to a friend for a long time.. Grandfather: Really? Do you think we won't have letters in the future?

Hatem: Yes, I think everyone will use social networking sites instead. It's easier and quicker! **Mother**: The only thing that we can be sure of is that technology is not going to stand still! You'd better show me how to use the site, Hatem!

Hatem: OK, Mum!

Narrator: Conversation 1

Mother: Do you have any plans for the weekend, Mazin?

Mazin: Yes, Mum. We've got to find out about the history of mobile phones for a school project, so I'm planning to go to the library tomorrow to do my research.

Mother: OK. Anything else?

Mazin: Yes, when I've finished at the library, I'm going to play football with my friends.

Mother: Take your time with your project work. It's important that you work hard on your projects. **Mazin:** I know, Mum. I promise to work really hard.

Mother: Good. And don't play football until you've finished.

Mazin: I promise I won't.

Narrator: Conversation 2

Warda: Hi, Eman. Are you busy this evening?

Eman: Well, my plan is to finish my English homework and then write my blog,. **Warda:** I plan to finish that homework too, but I've still got a lot to do.



Hello English

Second Term

Eman: I'll come round to your house and we can do it together if you like. **Warda:** Thanks, that's really kind of you. What about your blog? **Eman:** I'm going to do my blog later.

Narrator: Conversation 3

Father: What are you doing, Ashraf?

Ashraf: I' m texting some of my friends. We' re going to meet in town tomorrow evening.

Father: It's late. Don't be long.

Ashraf: I won't.

Father: There's school tomorrow and you must get up early.

Ashraf: I know, Dad. I promise that I'll be really quick.

Reading	Stay connected	0\$\$\$\$\$0		
Twenty-five year	rs ago, communications between people were v	very different from today. To call		

Twenty-five years ago, communications between people were very different from today. To call friends quickly, we needed to find a telephone to ring them. If time was not important, we wrote a letter and sent it by post. For fast written communications, businesses sent faxes.

Although many people still use these ways of communicating, they are becoming less popular because of new technology. Today, the most common forms of personal and business communications are mobile phone calls, text messages and emails. But even mobile phones are changing all the time. Many people now use smart phones. These are phones with computers which can connect to the internet and send e-mails.

In the future, the only thing that we can be sure of is that technology is not going to stand still. Scientists are going to continue inventing new, more complex ways of communicating. Some experts are predicting that the next big development will be in visual communications. Small mobile computers with fast internet connections will probably be the first mobile devices that give us high-quality visual communication, so that we can see the people we are talking to.

Further in the future, who knows what will happen? By the year 2023, scientists are predicting that we will be able to send text messages by the power of thought. A special helmet connected to our brain will turn what we are thinking into a digital form which we will then be able to communicate to other people that we know.

Tape Script



Jane: My name is Jane Eyre and this is the story of my life. In 1818, when I was two years old, my parents died. I went to Gateshead Hall to live with Mr. Reed, who was my mother's brother. Unfortunately, Mr. Reed died some years later, but I continued to live there with his wife and children, Eliza, John and Georgina. The three children disliked me. They said that I was not as good as them because I had come from a poorer family.

One afternoon, when I was nine years old, I was reading quietly in a room at the back of the house. It was winter and I had read in that room every day for weeks. My cousin John had not known I was there so when he saw me , he started to shout at me. "You have no right to read our books in this room" he said. "You have no money and we have to feed and clothe you. Don't touch our books!"

Then he pushed the book out of my hand. I shouted at him and tried to get the book back. At that moment, Mrs. Reed came into the room. "You naughty girl, Jane," she said and told one of the servants to lock me in a room upstairs. So I was put into the room, the door was locked and I was left alone.

The room was cold, large and silent. Although the room had furniture in it, it was hardly ever used. My uncle, Mr. Reed, had died in this room. What a kind man he had been when I first moved there! But his wife was just the opposite. She had disliked me from the day that I arrived at Gateshead Hall and had always made me miserable.

Reading	Jane Eyre	
As I settled int	o my new life at Thorn field Hall as a governess, I	became more comfortable. Mrs.
Fairfax was alway	ays really kind to me and I got on very well with my s	student, Adele. I often climbed on

Hello English

Second Term

to the roof of the house and looked over the countryside because I needed contact with the outside world.

Three very happy months passed. One day, when Adele had a cold and I did not have to teach her, I offered to take a letter to the post office for Mrs. Fairfax. I set off for the village of Hay, about eight kilometres away. It was a really beautiful day; it was sunnier but colder than it had been recently and the roads were extremely icy.

As I was walking along, I heard the sound of a horse's hooves on the road. Just then, an enormous black dog ran past me and then came a gentleman on a black horse. Suddenly, the horse slipped and threw the gentleman to the ground. I ran towards the horse and its rider. The gentleman was on the ground in pain.

I tried to catch the horse but without success, so I told the man I would go to Thornfield Hall for help. When I said that I was the governess there, the gentleman looked quite surprised. Finally, I managed to catch the horse and helped the gentleman get back on to it. And without thanking me, he called for his dog Pilot to follow and set off towards Thornfield Hall.

Tape Script



1- **Baker** : I get up very early in the morning – about four o'clock, and I don't finish until three o'clock in the afternoon, but I really love my job. I work in my own street, so I don't have to travel far to get to work. The first thing I do when I get here is to turn on the ovens, so that when the bread is ready, the ovens are the right temperature. Mixing the flour and water together takes a long time, and when I finish that I put the new loaves into tins and then put them in the oven. By eight o'clock my shop is full of warm bread ready for my customers to buy. The rest of the day, I make cakes.

2- **Cleaner** : I do most of my work when other people are at home. Some weeks I work in the evenings and some weeks I work in the early morning. I must finish my work before the office workers arrive. It would be impossible to do my job when everyone was working. I clean the floors and the toilets and I empty all the bins. I don't touch anything on the desks, even if they are very untidy. It's not a bad job, but it is quite tiring.

3- Fireman : Of course, it's a very dangerous job sometimes, but we don't spend all our time in burning buildings. Most of our work is going to road accidents, usually when people must be cut out of their vehicles. I have never been badly injured but some of my friends have. Last year, my best friend died in a fire in a block of flats. When I'm working, I don't think about the dangers, because I'm too busy rescuing people – but later, at home, I think about what I've done. That can be very frightening.

4- **Flight attendant** : I mainly work on international flights. This month it's Egypt to China and Japan. Last month all my flights were to the States. It can be a tiring job, but it's usually interesting. There are always lots of things to do, like getting passengers drinks and serving food. The only part of my job I don't like is staying in hotels in other countries. Next year I'm going to be on national flights - so I'll only have to fly to other towns and cities in Egypt.

5- **Carpenter** : I've done this job since I left school when I was 13. I worked as an apprentice for my grandfather, who had a workshop at the end of our street. I learnt everything from him. The first thing he taught me was how to cut wood neatly with a saw. Now most of my work is repairing things in people's houses, like doors and windows, stairs and floors, but sometimes someone asks me to make a table or chair – and that's what I really enjoy doing.

Reading	People at work	

Samira : Who do you work for?

Leila : One World Travel. It's one of the biggest travel companies in the country.

Samira : Why did you apply for the job?

Leila : I applied for the job there because I wanted to work for a modern company that works with foreign companies. The company also said they would train me.

Samira : What qualifications did you need?

Leila : I had to have the Secondary Education Certificate. I also had to speak and write English. **Samira**: What training did you do? What training did you need to do?

Hello English

Second Term

Leila : Before I started, the company sent me on a language course to improve my English and to learn to translate Arabic into English and English into Arabic. I was also taught to use the internet.

Samira : How many hours do you work?

Leila : I work eight hours a day, six days a week, starting on Saturday and finishing on Thursday.

Samira : How much holiday do you have / get?

Leila : I have three weeks' holiday a year, and I have all the national holidays.

Samira : What work did you do at first?

Leila : When I started, I spent a week finding out what other people in the company did.

Samira : What work do you do now?

Leila : Now I write letters and e-mails and I answer telephone calls from other countries. Sometimes I also translate letters from English into Arabic.

Samira : Do you Like your job

Leila : Yes, I really enjoy my job. I enjoy meeting and talking to customers from all over the world.

Review D

Tape Script

Manal: What's our first lesson tomorrow morning, Leila?

Leila : It's English.

Manal: Great, I really enjoy our English lessons.

Leila : So do I. I think learning languages like English is very useful, don't you?

Manal: Yes, I do, but some people don't understand why it's useful. They don't realise that they will probably need to use English one day.

Leila: I think we'll all need to know English for our jobs or for travelling abroad.

Manal: Exactly! It means we'll be able to communicate with people all over the world, not just in English-speaking countries like Britain or Australia. Have you ever had to use English outside school?

Leila: Yes, I have. My father brought some Japanese colleagues to our house. They couldn't speak Arabic and we couldn't speak Japanese, but we could all speak English, so at times like that, it is really useful.

Manal: I think our English lessons at school are fantastic, but I'd like to find more ways of practising what we learn in class.

Leila: There are hundreds of websites which can help you to Bet better at reading English, Manal. There are also lots of ways of practising your written English, for example by emailing

someone in an English-speaking country. And, of course, there are lots of English radio programmes you can listen to.

Manal: I go on social networking sites where English is the language everyone uses. I've also discovered a website where you can ask questions about English and someone replies in less than 24 hours.

Leila: That's a brilliant idea. You must give me the address of that website.

Manal: I also read people's blogs and sometimes make comments on what they write .I 'm going to start my own blog soon.

Leila: That's a good idea. I'm sure that people from all over the world will read it.

Manal: Are you going to read my blog?

Leila: Of course!

Reading	Charlotte Bronte	

Charlotte Bronte, the writer of *Jane Eyre,* was born in the north of England in 1816. She was the third of six children. Her mother's sister, Elizabeth, looked after the children because Charlotte's mother had died when she was five.

When their father was at work, Charlotte helped her aunt to look after her younger sisters in the quiet village where they lived. In their free time, Charlotte, her brother Branwell and her sisters Emily and Anne wrote poems and stories. From 1835 to 1838, Charlotte was a school teacher. Then, in 1839, she worked as a governess to a number of families. In 1842, Charlotte travelled to Europe to teach English, but she was miserable and returned to England the following year.



Hello English

Second Term

In 1846, Charlotte wrote a collection of poems with her sisters Emily and Anne. Instead of using their real names, they called themselves Currer, Ellis and Acton Bell. These could be men's or women's names, and the sisters chose them to hide the fact that they were women. At that time in England, people thought that women should not write books and did not take their work seriously. The people who read Charlotte's novels were not sure whether she was a man or a woman.

By the year 1850, Charlotte's brother and sisters had all died and Charlotte and her father lived alone together. Because her novel *Jane Eyre* was so successful Charlotte sometimes visited London and made contact with other writers. Soon, everyone realized that Charlotte was a woman and learnt that, like her character Jane, she was a very strong, clever woman

Charlotte continued to look after her father and In 1854, married a man who worked with her father Sadly, in 1855, at the age of 38, Charlotte Bronte died

Reading	The growth of slums	
	where a second second state of Oliver Twist but they are still	a survey survey the last survey with a

Slums were very common in the time of Oliver Twist, but they are still common in many cities today. A slum may be an overcrowded shantytown on the edge of a large city where very poor people live. Or it may be an old part near the centre of a city. People's homes may be one-room shacks or ordinary buildings, but often the homes have no clean water, electricity or sanitation. In some slums, like those in Rio de Janeiro in Brazil, there is a lot of crime and it can be dangerous for the police to go into them.

Although there have always been very poor areas in large cities, slums grew quickly in many parts of the world in the 1970s and 1980s when people left their homes in the country to look for work. When people arrived in the cities, there was often no work or housing for them, so they built their own homes out of things they found: wood, metal and other materials. Some of the people who live in today's slums do jobs like manual labour or selling things in the street, but this work is often informal and sometimes illegal.

In the nineteenth century, slums were found around factories in English cities like London or Manchester. The residents were usually factory workers who were paid very little money. Since the time of Oliver Twist, everyone has worked hard to improve housing, and today there are no slums in English cities.

The United Nations has said that there are a billion people in the world today living in slums. The number could be two billion by 2030. The slums of today, in cities like Mumbai, Jakarta or Rio de Janeiro, are usually in areas where most of the people have no work and no money.

Tape Script

<u>Unit 13</u>

Presenter: Our programme today is about the highest railway line in the world: the China to Tibet railway. In our studio we have Michael Chen, a railway engineering expert. If you have any questions you would like to ask our expert this morning, phone us and we'll do our best to answer them. Our first caller today is Khaled, who is phoning from Cairo. What's your question, Khaled?

Khaled: Good morning. I'd like to know some facts about the railway. How long is this line, and when was it built?

Mr. **Chen**: Hi, Khaled. Well, the line was built in two stages: the first stage, which was started in 1951, did not open until 1984. This stage is 815 kilometres long. The second stage is another 1,142 kilometres long. This stage was opened in 2006.

Khaled : Thanks . Can I ask you for one more fact?

Presenter : Yes, of course.

Khaled : I know this is the highest railway line in the world, but exactly how high is it?

Mr. **Chen**: Well, about half the line is over 4,000 metres above sea level, and at its highest point – the Tanggula Pass - it's 5,072 metres. At this altitude, the air is very thin, so all the passengers are given a supply of oxygen.

Khaled : Really? That's amazing. That's like being on a plane.

Mr. Chen: That's right.

Presenter: Thanks, Khaled. Our next caller is Rami from Alexandria. What's your question, Rami? **Rami** : Hello. I'd like to know how difficult it was for engineers to build this railway.

Mr. Chen: That's a good question. It was extremely difficult. One of the main problems for the

Hello English

Second Term

engineers was that over 500 kilometres of the line is built on permanently frozen ground. This includes a tunnel which is 1,338 metres long. To make this tunnel, they had to cut through frozen earth. The line also includes 675 bridges. In all, 20,000 people worked on the line.

Rami : Thanks. That's incredible !

Presenter: Our last caller is Magdi from Suez. What would you like to know, Magdi? **Magdi** : Good morning. I'd like to know about travelling on this railway. Where does it start and end? **Mr. Chen**: Well, Magdi, the line starts in Xining in China and ends in Lhasa, the capital of Tibet. Trains run every day to Lhasa. Altogether, there are 45 stations. Passengers are carried at 120 kilometres an hour by trains specially built for high altitudes. **Magdi** : Thanks very much.

Presenter: OK, that's all we have time for today. Thanks to all those who called us and a special thanks to our expert, Michael Chen.

Reading	The Suez Canal	022220 0
For the worked of worker, we call had worked to link the Markteman on Ose and The Dad Ose to		

For thousands of years, people had wanted to link the Mediterranean Sea and The Red Sea to shorten the sea journey from the west to the east. The first canal was built in around 1300 BCE, but it was not taken care of and it was not used after the eighth century.

In 1858, a French engineer called Ferdinand de Lesseps and the Egyptian government started work on a new canal. When the 164 kilometre-long canal was opened in 1869, it had cost \$100,000. At first, the Universal Suez Ship Canal Company operated the canal. The company was given the right to operate the canal for 99 years.

World business was immediately affected by the opening of the canal. Things were moved by ship much faster than before, when the ships had to sail around Africa. The journey from Europe to Asia was shortened by 9,500 kilometres and by 20 days.

The Suez Canal is one of the world's most important waterways. It was taken over by Egypt in 1956, and is now used by about 50 ships every day. In most places, the canal is only wide enough for one ship, but there are passing places which means that ships can travel in both directions at the same time. Each ship takes between 11 and 16 hours to pass through the canal. The canal is now operated by the Suez Canal Authority and ships are charged to use the waterway. This money is important income for Egypt.

A new 35-kilometre section of the canal was opened in 2015. It was built to help modern ships, which are much bigger than in the past

ASK FOR ADVICE & GIVE ADVICE

Narrator: Conversation 1

Hazem: Can I ask your advice?

Mr Osman: Sure, how can I help?

Hazem: My wife and children and I are going to London to see my brother. How do you think that we should travel? My children want to fly, but my wife and I would prefer to go by boat and train.

What's your advice?

Mr Osman: How long are you going for?

Hazem: Just a week.

Mr Osman: Well, if you want my honest opinion, I think that you should fly from Cairo airport. If you went by boat and train, the journey would take you a very long time. You would only be with your brother for two or three days.

Hazem: You're right, thank you.

Narrator: Conversation 2

Businessman: Good morning. My colleagues and I are travelling to Egypt on a business trip soon. Could you give us some advice?

Travel agent: of course. Tell me a little about your trip. Where exactly in Egypt are you going? **Businessman**: Well, we're staying in a hotel in Alexandria, but we also need to visit Cairo and Aswan. How would you suggest that we travel?



Hello English

Second Term

Travel agent: If I were you, I'd go by train. Egyptian railways are generally fast and comfortable, especially if you are travelling between cities. I don't think that you should go by road, it would take you much longer.

Businessman: Thanks for your help.

Energy Tape Script

Ease Tape Script

<u>Unit 14</u>

Narrator: You probably don't know much about the writer Jules Verne, but you may have heard of two of his most famous novels: Journey to the Centre of the Earth and Around the World in Eighty Days. Verne wrote stories about air travel, space travel and submarines before planes, rockets or submarines were used. This is why many people call Jules Verne the *'Father of science fiction'*.

Verne was born in I 828. He grew up in a port called Nantes in northern France. It was always busy with ships coming and going. This may be why Jules became interested in travel and exploration. There is a story that when he was very young, he wanted to travel so much that he hid on a ship as it was leaving Nantes for America.

After he left school, Jules Verne studied to be a lawyer, but spent a lot of his time writing stories about fantastic journeys. His father, who was also a lawyer, realised this, so he stopped paying for his son's studies and told him he had to find a job. His first story, which was called Five Weeks in a Balloon, came out in 1863. After that, he wrote two books every year and earned enough money to live on his writing. His most well-known book, that he wrote in 1873, was Around the World in Eighty Days. It first came out in a magazine.

In 1905, Jules Verne became ill and died. His last novel came out after his death. It was called The Lighthouse at the End of the World.

Reading	Around the world in eighty days	0 \$\$\$\$ 0
---------	---------------------------------	---------------------

The story begins in a London club on October 2, 1872. Phileas Fogg, a rich man, has an argument with a friend about how long it would take him to travel round the world. Fogg's friend does not believe that Fogg can finish the journey in 80 days. If he succeeds, Fogg will win £20,000.

Fogg leaves London, with his servant Passepartout, at 8.45 pm on October 2. They will have to return at the same time on December 21. After seven days, they reach Suez, where they meet a man called Fix. Fix is a policeman who thinks that Fogg is the criminal he is looking for. The three men travel to Bombay by ship, then to Calcutta by train. Unfortunately, the railway line is not finished and they need to travel part of the way by elephant. On their journey, they save a young woman from death. She is called Aouda and she goes with them on their journey. From Calcutta, they travel by ship to Hong Kong, then across the Pacific to San Francisco.

In San Francisco, Fogg, Passepartout, Fix and ; Aouda catch the train to New York, but during this journey Passepartout is kidnapped. Fogg rescues his servant, but they get to New York late and miss their boat to Liverpool. After fuel problems, the next boat finally reaches Britain.

As Soon as they arrive, Fix arrests Fogg. He quickly realises that Fogg is not the real criminal, but by now they have missed their train to London, lost a day and so lost the money. However, Passepartout discovers that it is December 20, not December 21. Because they had travelled east, they had crossed the International Date Line and saved a day! Fogg Passepartout hurry to the club and arrive in time to win the £ 20,000.



Speaker 1: I used to have a phobia about spiders. My father was frightened of spiders, so my phobia must have come from him. I remember him telling me that many spiders are poisonous. I always thought that any spider I saw was going to bite me, so I avoided all of the places where I might find a spider. I hated opening cupboards because I might have found a spider in it. And I never visited old buildings that might have been their home.

Speaker 2: My mother says I loved dolls until I was about five, so fear of dolls can't have been a phobia I was born with. It just happened slowly, like an illness. When I was seven, one of my aunts tried to help

Hello English

Second Term

me get over this fear. She brought me an old doll, then took off its hair to show me that it wasn't a real person. Of course this just made everything worse. For weeks after I had bad dreams about dolls. That was when my fear turned into a real phobia. Now, if I see a doll, I feel ill and dizzy. I must get away from it.

Speaker 3: When I was fifteen, I was in London and I had to travel on the underground. The train was full of people. Everyone was talking or reading their newspapers, then the train stopped in a tunnel. Most people stayed quite calm, but I began to panic. I ran up and down the train crying and shouting. After about five minutes, the train started moving again, and I got out at the next station. Since then I haven't travelled on the underground. I don't like being in very small places — that must be why I have a phobia about lifts, too. In my last job I worked on the fourteenth floor of an office building, but I went up by the stairs, not the lift. I sometimes took the lift just to show myself that I could do it, but I didn't enjoy it.

Speaker 4: Going to the park and other open places can be terrible for me. I have a very strange feeling when I go to these places. The small streets near my home and small gardens aren't a problem, but a trip to a big open space like a park or a sports ground can be a nightmare. I hear my own voice saying, "I must get away!" I'm really afraid of open spaces.

	Reading		PI	nobia	IS			19	0	8	€[
-						 						

Phobias are not just extreme fears-they are irrational fears. They can affect people's lives and make them frightened to do things which most people do without thinking. For example, if you have a fear of heights, you may drive 40 kilometres to avoid a high bridge.

The usual treatment is to slowly show the person who has the phobia what they fear. For example, a person with a spider phobia first thinks about a spider, then looks at photographs of spiders,' and finally looks at a real spider. The therapist who is giving the treatment remains calm and helps the patient to relax. The person with the phobia feels in control of the situation and, because of this, they do not panic. After a few sessions, they realise that the thing they are afraid of cannot hurt them.

In another treatment, the therapist gets close to the spider and picks it up without showing any fear. This helps the patient to see that he or she has nothing to fear.

Some phobias can be treated in a few sessions with the therapist. Some people with phobias need medicine to help them relax before treatment. Treatment can be done in groups where people with the same phobia are helped together. It is also possible to have treatment from a computer program, where the patient is put into a virtual situation with the thing he or she fears.

Tape Script Review E

Presenter: Welcome to Science Now. The subject of today's programme is the Three Gorges Dam on the Yangtze River in China. In the studio we have Dr Hassan, a professor of engineering from Cairo University who has visited the dam and will answer your questions. Welcome, Professor Hassan.

Professor: Thank you.

Presenter: Can I start by asking you two simple questions? First of all, what are dams and why must we build them?

Professor: Well, a dam is a very strong high wall which stops most of the water of a river moving. Some water then runs through channels in the wall of the dam and turns a wheel to make electricity. So dams are needed because industrial countries must have clean electricity for their modern factories. Dams also help to control floods.

Presenter: Thanks. And now Amira from Alexandria has a question.

Amira: Hello. I'd like to ask the professor to give us a few facts about the Three Gorges Dam for my school project.

Professor: Hello, Amira. Where shall I begin? There are so many interesting facts. First of all, the Three Gorges Dam is 185 metres high and 2,309 metres long. It cost twenty-five billion dollars to build and produces a huge amount of electricity.

Amira: How long did it take to build?

Professor: More than sixteen years. It was started in 1993 and finished in 2009.

Presenter: Thank you, Amira. We now have a question from a student of engineering. Nabil, what is your question for the professor?

Nabil: Hello. I'd like to know what would have happened if China hadn't built this enormous dam.

Hello English

Second Term

Professor: That's a very good question, Nabil. The truth is that not everyone wanted the dam to be built. These were the people who lived near the Yangtze River and who lost their home when the dam was built. So these people would have been very happy if the dam hadn't been built. On the other hand, if they hadn't built the dam, Chinese industries would have used more fuels like gas or oil, which are getting more and more expensive.

Nabil: Do you know how many people lost their homes?

Professor: They say that more than a million people were moved and that more than a thousand towns and villages disappeared when the dam was finished.

Presenter: That's incredible. Finally, Professor, I have a question. Can ships still travel along the river?

Professor: Yes, they can. There is a system of locks and there's also a special lift which operates for the ships. It carries them over the dams.

Presenter: Thank you very much, Professor. Unfortunately, that's all we have time for today.

Reading	Hong Kong – a wonder of the modern world	日本のの
<u> </u>	3 3 1	* * *

Hong Kong is in the South China Sea near the coast of China. It consists of Hong Kong Island, Lantau Island, Kowloon, The New Territories and 263 other small islands. In the past. only fishermen and farmers lived in Hong Kong, but today it is a busy port and an important trade centre. Many of China's exports pass through Hong Kong. It is also known as a shopping centre.

Hong Kong has a population of 7 million people in a land area of 1,100 sq km. This means that people live very close to each other. There are 6900 people in every square kilometre Despite this, Hong Kong is a good environment to live in: it has quiet parks, beaches and mountains to climb.

From 1842 to 1997, Hong Kong was British, but in 1997 it became part of China . The two most important languages are Chinese and English. It has its own television, radio and newspapers, and its own money, the Hong Kong dollar.

To many people, Hong Kong is one of the world's greatest cities because it is such a successful financial and trade centre.

Reading	The importance of law enforcement	こう なららら こうしょう しょう しょう しょう しょう しょう しょう しょう しょう しょう
---------	-----------------------------------	---

In the England of Charles Dickens's time, very poor people like Oliver Twist, who had no money and no home, had to live in terrible conditions. One of the results of this poverty was a lot of street crimes, particularly robberies, and the number of these crimes rose quickly during the first half of the nineteenth century. The number of violent crimes also rose and this worried many people.

In situations like these, laws have to be enforced to protect society, and for successful law enforcement, society needs honest police officers and an efficient legal system which makes people feel safe. Trials and punishments must also be completely fair.

In the time of Oliver Twist, punishments were harsh and included long prison sentences. Some criminals lost their lives. Other prisoners were sent from England to Australia, often to spend the rest of their lives away from their families. Today, in most countries, punishments are less harsh and there are different punishments for less serious crimes. For example, some criminals may have to pay a fine. Others cannot travel freely and have to stay in their hometown.

Laws are made to stop people from behaving badly towards each other. But however good a law is, it must be enforced by the police and a legal system in which the public is confident.

Unit 16

Tape Script

Hussein: Did you see that programme on television last night about biodiversity? **Dina**: No, I didn't, Was it interesting?

Hussein: Yes, very,

Dina: So what is biodiversity?

Hussein: It means the number of different plants and animals in the world. There are millions of different species and they are still discovering new species of animals and plants today in remote areas. Scientists won't have discovered all of these species for hundreds of years. The problem is that by that time, many of the species will have become extinct before we even know about them.



Hello English

Second Term

Dina: So are we losing species of plants and animals?

Hussein: Yes, we are. That's what the programme was really about. They said that many species are disappearing because of human activities.

Dina: Does that matter?

Hussein: Yes. The problem is that every animal and plant plays an important role in our ecosystem. For example, if an insect lives on a certain plant, and farmers get rid of that plant to grow their crops, that insect species may become extinct. This could mean that the birds and other animals which eat these insects will also become extinct in time.

Dina: I see what you mean. But what can we do to stop so many species dying out?

Hussein: Well, we should try to protect the habitats where they live. One way of doing that is to stop cutting down forests lo grow crops.

Dina: There must be other things we can do.

Hussein: Well, we could protect animals and plants which are in danger. There are many ways of doing this, like making it illegal to hunt certain animals.

Dina: And what about climate change? Is climate change a threat to biodiversity too?

Hussein: Yes, I'm afraid so. Some scientists say that 40 percent of the Amazon will have gone by 2l I5 if the earth's temperature goes up by 2"C. In the Arctic, animals like polar bears are already finding it difficult to survive. Some people are predicting that thousands of species of plants and animals will have disappeared by the year 2100.

Dina: That's terrible. We have to do something to stop that from happening.

Hussein: I agree, but what can ordinary people do about climate change?

Dina: I don't know, but we have to try to do something.

Reading Feeding the world	055550
-------------------------------	--------

By 2050, the population of the world will have grown to about nine billion, and people are asking whether there will be enough food for everyone. The answer is uncertain.

Scientists say that, during the last 40 years, world food production has kept up with population growth, but this may not continue. Firstly, there is a shortage of suitable land. We have already used over a quarter of the earth's land area. By 2050, farmers will have used even more high-quality land and will have to use less-productive areas. Secondly, in many countries there is already a shortage of water for growing crops, and this problem will probably have become worse by 2050. Finally, nobody knows how climate change will affect food production.

Scientists know that the world can produce enough food for the world's population, but millions of people are hungry because food is in the wrong place, is too expensive, or cannot be stored for long enough.

One way in which Egypt has increased food production is to turn desert areas into new agricultural land. In recent years, the country has reclaimed 400,000 hectares of desert and another 600,000 hectares will be added in the next few years. It is hoped that people will move out of the cities to work in agriculture and so help Egypt to produce more food. This process will only succeed if there is enough water and if this is managed carefully. In Abu Minqar, a Western Desert oasis where water is well managed, farmers can grow many different crops and raise animals successfully.

More developments like this will help Egypt and other countries to produce enough food for their growing populations

Tape Script

Narrator: Conversation 1

Boy 1: It's a really difficult situation, isn't it?

Boy 2: Yes, what can anyone do about it?

Boy 1: They could build the road on the other side of the town.

Boy 2: That's a good idea. Or what about trying to move the birds to a different habitat?

Boy 1: I don't think that's the answer. These birds have lived in that area for hundreds of years.

- Boy 2: You're probably right. How about building the road but trying to protect the birds?
- Boy 1: It's a good idea, but how would you do that?

Boy 2: Good question. I'm not really sure.

Narrator: Conversation 2

Girl 1: So, what do you think they could do about this problem?

Hello English

Second Term

Girl 2: Surely they could build the road in a different place.

- Girl 1: They thought about that, but it would be more expensive.
- Girl 2: Why don't they just stop traffic driving through the town at busy times of the day?

Girl 1: They can't do that, the drivers would be furious.

Girl 2: So what do you think they should do?

Girl 1: There isn't an easy answer, but in the end, the people of the town are more important than the birds, aren't they?

Girl 2: No, I don't agree. We need to stop animals becoming extinct

Tape Script

<u>Unit 17</u>

Tour guide: Well, good morning everyone and welcome to 221 Baker Street, the building where Sherlock Holmes and his friend Dr Watson lived between 1881 and 1894. As you know, this is now the Sherlock Holmes Museum. I'll show you some of the places you'll know about if you have read the Sherlock Holmes stories or seen the films If you have any questions, just ask them as we walk round.

Visitor 1: Excuse me, Sherlock Holmes wasn't a real person, was he?

Tour guide: No, he wasn't . He was a fictional detective who was invented by the writer, Sir Arthur Conan Doyle. However, to many people he is very real. Some people believe that the character was based on a doctor who once taught the writer. The house itself, which is protected by the government, was built in 1815. It has been visited by millions of Sherlock Holmes's fans from all over the world. If you want ...

....OK. We are now on the first floor and this is the famous study where many crimes were discussed and solved by the detective and his doctor friend. Here you can see the great man's hat and pipe. **Visitor 2**: Is that Holmes's chair?

Tour guide: Yes, it is. You can sit in it if you like.

Visitor 1: It's very dark in this room, isn't it?

Tour guide: Yes, Victorian houses were usually painted in dark colours...

....We are now on the second floor with Dr. Watson's bedroom at the back and Mrs. Hudson's room at the front.

Visitor 2: Excuse me, who was Mrs. Hudson?

Tour guide: She was Holmes and Watson's landlady. Unfortunately, we can't go up to the third Floor today because it's being decorated But next time you visit, remember to go up to the third floor to see models of famous scenes from Sherlock Holmes's stories. You can also ...

	Reading	The Hound of the Baskervilles	日体体体体日
--	---------	-------------------------------	--------

Sherlock Holmes and Watson have a visit from a man called Dr Mortimer. He wants Holmes's advice before he goes to see his friend Sir Henry Baskerville. Sir Henry is the last member of the Baskerville family and is going to inherit the family home, Baskerville Hall, in the west of England. Mortimer is worried about Henry and tells Holmes and Watson an old legend about a wild dog. It is called the Hound of the Baskervilles and it killed Sir Hugo Baskerville hundreds of years earlier. It has also killed other members of the Baskerville family since then. The legend says that this dog will kill anyone called Baskerville.

At first, the detective laughs at the story, but then Dr Mortimer tells him about Henry's uncle, Sir Charles Baskerville, who has just been found dead in his garden. He had no physical injuries, but he had died with a terrified expression on his face. Also near his body there were the footprints of an enormous dog. Suddenly, Holmes is very interested and goes to Baskerville Hall to investigate.

Holmes and Watson solve the crime. They discover that the criminal is called Stapleton, a cousin of the Baskervilles who wants to inherit the family home. He knows the legend of the hound, and trains a black dog to kill the first person it sees. He doesn't feed the dog because he wants to make it very hungry. However, when he sends it to kill Sir Henry Baskerville, Holmes and Watson are waiting. When they shoot the dog, everyone realises that the hound is just an ordinary dog. Stapleton drowns as he is trying to escape



Hello English

Second Term

Type Script

<u>Unit 18</u>

Presenter: Welcome to Science for Life. With us in the studio today is a scientist, Dr Nihal Hany. Thank you for joining us, Dr Hany.

Dr Nihal Hany: Thank you for having me.

Presenter: The two forms of pollution we usually hear about are air and water pollution, but you're going, to talk about a very different kind of pollution, aren't you?

Dr Nihal Hany: Yes, that's right. I'm going to talk about noise pollution.

Presenter: So how do you define noise pollution?

Dr Nihal Hany: Noise pollution is simply a sound that we do not want to hear. This can be the sound of traffic in the street when we're trying to sleep, or loud noises coming from a neighbour's house when we're watching TV.

Presenter: Is noise pollution always loud?

Dr Nihal Hany: It isn't always very loud, but it's always louder than we want to hear. We all like music, but if it's very loud late at night, it can be extremely annoying. Often it isn't only the noise itself that is the problem, it's the time of day when we hear it or how long we hear the noise for. Nobody minds a car alarm going off for a few seconds, but if a car alarm goes off every ten minutes, it can be very difficult to put up with.

Presenter: And is noise pollution a problem?

Dr Nihal Hany: It can be. In really bad situations, it can cause hearing problems. But more often, it can increase levels of stress in society.

Presenter: What forms of noise pollution do most people complain about?

Dr Nihal Hany: Probably the most common examples are noises from neighbours – people shouting or children playing noisily - and traffic in the street. People don't like hearing car horns late at night. Burglar alarms or car alarms often go off at night. And we don't like hearing voices talking loudly en mobile phones.

Presenter: But what can we do about unwanted noise?

Dr Nihal Hany: That's a difficult question. If the noise comes from a neighbour's house, people should ask their neighbour politely to reduce the level of noise.

Presenter: And what about the noise of traffic and planes?

Dr Nihal Hany: There isn't much anyone can do about this. In some countries, there are laws to stop people using their car horns late at night, but noise laws are difficult to enforce. And at some airports, they sometimes reduce the number of planes landing and taking off at night.

Presenter: So, if people can't put up with this kind of noise, what should they do?

Dr Nihal Hany: It may be possible to complain to the authorities, but this doesn't always succeed.

Presenter: So do you think they should live somewhere else?

Dr Nihal Hany: Sometimes this is the only answer.

Reading

Light pollution

The two forms of pollution that we hear about most often are air and water pollution. We know that these damage the environment and should be prevented or at least reduced. But there is another kind of pollution which is getting worse and which we do not hear much about. This is light pollution. We use artificial lights in our homes, in our cities to keep us safe at night, and to illuminate shops, offices and leisure facilities. Light pollution is when artificial light shines on areas that we do not want to illuminate. A street light which shines into someone's bedroom window and stops them from sleeping is a good example.

Another form of light pollution is the orange light which can be seen over towns and cities at night. Because of this, it never gets dark in some places. This makes it impossible for us to see the night

Hello English

Second Term

sky and for astronomers to study the stars. What is more important, this orange light can affect the lives of nocturnal birds and animals.

So what can we do to prevent or reduce light pollution? In our homes and work places, we should turn off lights that we do not need and make sure that our lights are only as powerful as they need to be. In some modern buildings, lights come on only when there are people in a room. We should also make sure that outside lights shine only on places that need to be illuminated and that street lights shine down and not up into the sky.

Tape Script

<u>Review F</u>

Interviewer: We hear a lot these days about noise pollution and people often talk about the noises and sounds they find annoying. But what about sounds that people enjoy? Most people enjoy listening to music, but what about other sounds they like? We interviewed people in the street and asked them to tell us their favourite sounds. Here are their answers.

Narrator: One

Woman 1: For me, it's the sound my baby makes when she wakes up in the morning, unless she's crying of course. If she's happy and comfortable, she's very patient and just lies there and makes funny little noises. She's usually very happy when she first wakes up. She just loves saying new words to herself.

Narrator: Two

Man 1: My favourite sound is definitely the sound of my children talking and laughing when they're playing. They're not worried about anything, they're just enjoying what they're doing.

Narrator: Three

Woman 2: My favourite sounds are the sounds of nature, like the wind blowing in the trees or waves as they break onto the beach. And of course, the sound of birds singing, especially very early in the morning. I love it when they wake me up.

Narrator: Four

Man 2: Hmm, that's an interesting question. I enjoy listening to music, especially when I'm driving my car. And I love the sound my car engine makes when I'm driving fast. I find that really exciting.

Narrator: Five

Woman 3: I love the sound of the street market in my town when I go shopping there early in the morning. It's a really interesting noise. Friendly traders are shouting out the prices of their goods and people are telling each other their news. I like markets because they're less formal than ordinary shops.

Narrator: Six

Child: My favourite sound is the sound of a busy kitchen, especially if someone's cooking a meal for me. It makes me really hungry.

Reading	Saving our planet	()\$\$\$\$ \$()

We hear a lot about the damage that is being caused to the earth: our cars and factories increase pollution; forests are being cut down so that farmers can have more land to grow food for the world's increasing population; and we are not doing enough to prevent animal and plant species from becoming extinct. So how can we make sure our planet survives? Here are some things everyone can do which will also save us money.

Firstly, we should use less energy. This will slow climate change and save money. We could start by turning off lights, computers and other machines in our homes when we are not using them. We could also use low-energy light bulbs and wash our clothes in warm (not hot) water.

Next, we should think about what we use and what we get rid of. Here are a few simple ideas that will save money as well as the environment. Use both sides of sheets of paper in a computer printer; if you get a new mobile phone, give your old one to a charity to recycle; take newspapers, bottles and tins to a recycling centre. A lot of the food that we buy is wasted: only buy what you need.

Finally, think about how you travel. Sometimes, you can make a phone call or send an email instead of making a journey. The cheapest way of getting about is to share a car with a friend. These are small things, but if everyone follows this advice, the earth will be a healthier, safer place.

Hello English

Second Term

Reading

Education today and in the past

Today most children have an education, but we should not take this for granted. Things were very different in the past, when only a small number of children went to school. These were mostly the children of important people in society and they became lawyers or doctors. Reading, writing and mathematics were the most important subjects. Nearly everywhere, it was only boys who were educated, while girls stayed at home with their mothers and learned to cook and look after the home. The children of poor people did not have the opportunity of going to school and many of them started work at a very young age.

Since then, there have been many reforms in education. Some people still pay for their children to go to school, but the greatest changes and improvements have been in public education. Compulsory education, which is free to everyone, usually starts between the ages of four and six and continues until children are sixteen or eighteen. Reading, writing and mathematics are still the most important subjects, but other subjects, such as science and technology, are also important for people growing up in the modern world. In modern societies, boys and girls now have equal opportunities in education.

One of the greatest changes has been to higher education. In some countries, between 40% and 60% of students aged 18 and over now go to university, but this is not usually free. In most places parents have to pay for their children's higher education.

OLIVER TWIST CHAPTER FIVE

Questions with Model answers

1- When and where did Mrs. Maylie take Oliver and Rose ? - When the weather was warm , Mrs. Maylie took Oliver and Rose to her small holiday house in the country far from London.

2- Who looked after Mrs. Maylie's house?

Mr. Giles and other servants looked after her usual house.

3- How far was Mrs. Maylie worried about Rose?

When rose was ill , Mrs. Maylie was so worried that she cried .

4- How did Oliver comfort Mrs. Maylie when she cried ?

Oliver told her that Rose was so young and so good that nothing bad would happen to her.

- 5- To whom did Mrs. Maylie send Oliver to post the letters?
- Mrs. Maylie asked him to post a letter to Dr Losberne and another letter to her son Harry . 6- Oliver was happy to do anything for Rose and Mrs. Maylie .<u>Discuss.</u>
- Oliver set off across some fields and ran until he reached the nearest village where he could post the letters. He felt happier when he knew that help was on its way.
- 7- Who did Oliver meet on his way back?

Oliver met **Monks** (a nervous – looking man with dark cruel eyes and an angry expression **8- What did Oliver think of Monks when he met him ?**

He didn't know if he was ill or mad, and he quickly ran back home.

9- What did Dr Losberne decide about Rose ?

Dr Losberne didn't seem very hopeful about Rose's case and decided to stay with them **10- How did Dr Losberne make Mrs. Maylie and Oliver happy ?**

Dr Losberne told them that Rose would be up and about in no time.

11- Why did Oliver decide to go out into the countryside ? To get Rose some flowers **12-What did Oliver tell Mr. Giles and Harry about Rose ?**

He told Mr. Giles that Rose would be fine

13- Who was Harry?

He was Mrs. Maylie's son and he was about twenty-five and he looked very like his mother. 14- Harry cared very much for Rose .<u>Illustrate .</u>

Harry cared about Rose very much and he brought flowers to Rose's room every day 15- How was Dr Losberne helpful to Oliver ?

Dr Losberne became Oliver's teacher and he spent his time learning to read and write .

16- When did Oliver feel happy for the first time in his life?

When Rose was completely better .

17- What happened to Oliver when he fell asleep while he was studying hard ? He had a terrible dream .He thought that he saw Fagin and another man looking at him through a window .He woke up with a cry and then realized that it wasn't a dream!

First Year	Hello English	Second Term				
 18- What did Fagin and Monks do? They disappeared and Oliver shouted out .Mr. Giles and Harry ran up to help him 19- Why did Harry tell Oliver it was a dream? 						
Because the men who ran after the criminals couldn't find them anywhere .						
20- What did Harry ask Oliver to write about? Harry asked Oliver to write to him about his mother (Mrs. Maylie) and Rose.						
21- What made Rose cry ? Rose cried because she saw Harry leaving the house22- What were the changes in the workhouse ?						
	o cruel to Oliver , Mr. Bumble , was no / .	w the master. He was also				
Mrs. Corney was the woma	an who listened to Nurse Sally the nigh	nt she died.				
24- What did Mr. Bumble t Mr. Bumble told Monks that	ell Monks in the inn ? he was the master of the workhouse					
25- Why did Monks give M Monks gave Mr. Bumble s	r. Bumble some money ? ome money to give him the informatio	n he wanted				
26- What kind of informati He wanted to know about t	on did Monks want to know from Mi he nurse who was attending Oliver's b	r Bumble ?				
27- Why was Monks disap Monks was disappointed	pointed ? because Mr. Bumble tell him that Nur	se Sally died last winter.				
	ant Monks to meet Mrs. Corney ? o meet Mrs. Corney who the nurse tole	d her something before her death				
Hoping to get more money 29- What did Monks ask h	·					
Monks asked Mr. Bumble to	b bring Mrs. Corney to his address at 9					
30- Where did Monks mee 31- What were the slums l	t Mr. Bumble and his wife? At a poolike ?	or part of the town by the river.				
	where only the poorest people lived .Mage streets were narrow and covered in v					
houses were so old that the	y could fall down at any time.					
Monks put a bag of coins in	Irs. Bumble to give him information front of Mrs. Bumble to tell him about					
night that Nurse Sally died 33 – What was written insi	de the locket?					
Inside the locket there was t	he name Agnes (Oliver's mother)					
	door in the floor next to where they w					
door they could see the dark *Quotations with model at	<pre>c river running below them. Mr. Bumble pswers:-</pre>	e looked frightened .				
1-"I have another letter he	re for my son Harry. You can post t					
a-Who said this to whom? b-Who was the first letter		Oliver. as for Dr Losberne.				
c-Why did the speaker se	nd these letters?					
-One to the doctor to con 2-"No, I saw Fagin with the	ne and see Rose. One to her son who e man I told you about."	is interested in Rose.				
a-Who said this to whom?	-Oliver to	Harry.				
b-Where did the speaker s -He saw them looking at	him through a window while he was sl					
c-What did the listener do 3-"I'm now the master of t		o look for the two criminals.				
a-Who said this to whom?	- Mr. Bum	ble to Monks.				
b-Why did the speaker say		ı?"				
-Because Monks asked, "You work at the workhouse, don't you?" c-What did the listener want to know? -He wanted to know information about Oliver.						
4-"Bring the person to this a-Who was the speaker?	s address at nine o'clock." - Monks.					
b-What does "the person'	' refer to? - Mrs. Corney, Mr.	. Bumble's wife.				
c-Why did the speaker ne -Because he needed info	ed that person? prmation about Nurse Sally who attend	led Oliver's birth.				
	81	7				
	na an a	F 1 mar han				

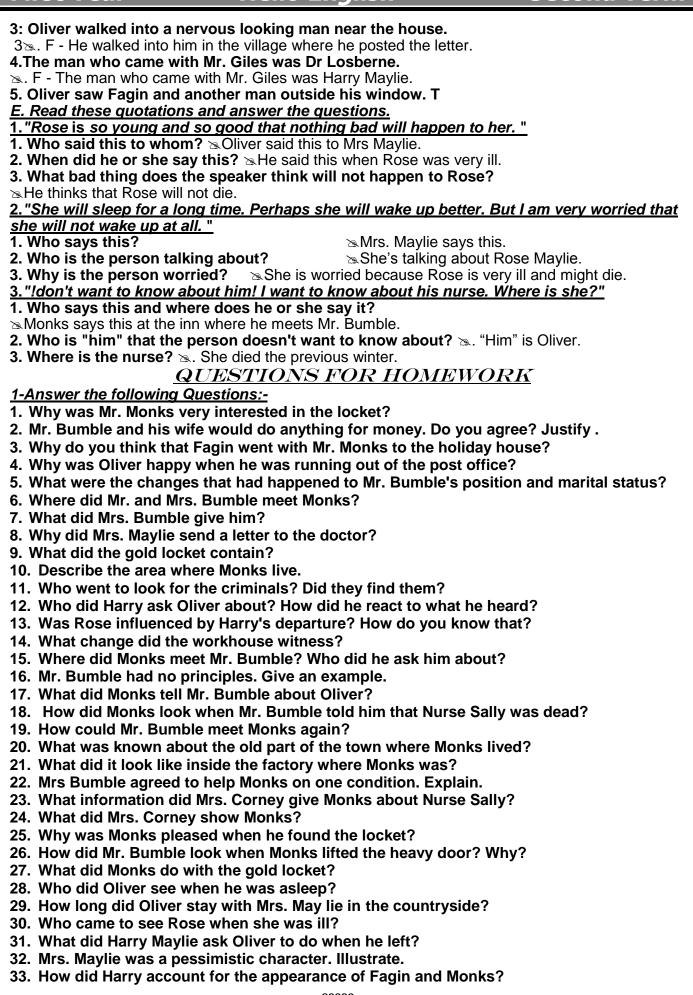
First Year Hello English

Second Term

5-"She died before she could tell me anymore."						
	rs. Bumble to Monks.					
b- Who was the speaker talking about? - N	urse Sally.					
	liver's mother.					
6-"I think she will be up and about in no time," a) Who said this quotation? To whom?	Dr Losberne to Mrs. Maylie and Oliver					
b) What was the effect of this sentence on the listener						
7-" Why didn't you tell me Rose was ill before?"						
a) Who said this quotation? To whom?	 Harry to his mother (Mrs. Maylie) 					
b) What did this question tell you about the speaker?	- He was interested in Rose.					
8- "Perhaps it was just a dream."	Horny to Oliver					
a) Who said this quotation? To whom?b) Why did he say so? - Beca	- Harry to Oliver ause they didn't see anyone					
9-" Why didn't you tell me Rose was ill before?"	ause they durit see anyone					
a) Who said this quotation? To whom?	- Harry to his mother (Mrs. Maylie)					
b) What did this question tell you about the speaker?	- He was interested in Rose.					
10- "Perhaps it was just a dream."						
a) Who said this quotation? To whom?	- Harry to Oliver					
 b) Why did he say so? - Beca 11-" But she did say something to a person I know 	ause they didn't see anyone					
a) Who said this quotation? To whom?	- Mr. Bumble to Monks					
b) Who was that person?	-This person was Mrs. Corney					
12 – " Bring the person to this address at nine o'cl	ock "					
a) Who said this quotation? To whom?	- Monks to Mr. Bumble					
b) What was the address ?	- It was a factory in the slums.					
13."Rose is so young and so good that nothing ba 1. Who said this to whom?	Oliver said this to Mrs. Maylie.					
	He said this when Rose was very ill.					
3. What bad thing does the speaker think will not h						
➣He thinks that Rose will not die.						
14."She will sleep for a long time. Perhaps she w	ill wake up better. But I am very worried					
<i>that she will not wake up at all.</i> " 1. Who says this?	∖∞Mrs. Maylie says this.					
	's talking about Rose Maylie.					
	d because Rose is very ill and might die.					
15."I don't want to know about him! I want to know about his nurse. Where is she?"						
1. Who says this and where does he or she say it?						
\sim Monks says this at the inn where he meets Mr. Bumble.						
 2. Who is "him" that the person doesn't want to know about? > "Him" is Oliver. 3. Where is the nurse? > She died the previous winter. 						
كتــاب المدرسـي						
<u>B. Answer these questions.</u> 1. About how long did Oliver stay with Mrs. May lie	in the countrycide?					
\approx Oliver stayed about three months/most of the summ						
2. Who came to see Rose when she was ill?						
S. Dr Losberne, Harry Maylie and Mr. Giles came to	see Rose when she was ill.					
3. What did Harry Maylie ask Oliver to do when he						
⇒Harry asked Oliver to write to him often (and secret						
4.What changes had happened to Mr. Bumble? What in inn? What did the man want? S. Mr. Bumble had						
master of the workhouse. Mr. Bumble met Monks. Mo						
was with Oliver's mother (Nurse Sally).						
5. Where did Mr. and Mrs. Bumble meet him again? What did Mrs. Bumble give him?						
They met in an old factory in a slum of the town. Mrs. Bumble gave him the locket that Nurse						
Sally had stolen from Oliver's mother.						
 <u>C. Write True {T} or False (F). Correct the false sentences.</u> 1. Oliver stayed with Mrs. Maylie in her big house. 1. F - They went to the countryside. 						
2. Rose became very ill and Mrs. Mayle thought Rose would die.T						
82						

Hello English

Second Term



Hello English

Second Term

34. What changes had happened to Mr. Bumble?	_					
35. Who did Mr. Bumble meet at an inn? What did the man war	nt?					
2-Read the following quotations, then answer the questions:-						
	id this and to whom?					
b) Who is she? c) What does the speaker mean by say						
	id this and to whom?					
b) where were the speakers then? c) why did	the speaker ask this question?					
3-"Rose is so young and so good that nothing bad will happen						
	id he or she say this?					
c) What bad thing does the speaker think will not happen to Rose						
4-"She will sleep for a long time. Perhaps she will wake up bett	er." a)Who says this?					
	ne person worried?					
5-"I don't want to know about him! I want to know about his nu	rse. Where is she?"					
a) Who says this and where does he or she say it?						
b) Who is "him" that the person doesn't want to know about?	c) Where is the nurse?					
6-"Good, then I'm sure you can give me some information."						
a) Who said this to whom? b) What inf	formation did the speaker want?					
c) Why was the speaker sure that he will take the information?						
7-"She said that she took the gold locket? What more did she t	ell you?					
a)Who said this to whom? b)Who took the gold locket? c)What	at did this locket belong to?					
8-"I didn't want to worry you." a) Who sai	id this to whom?					
8-"I didn't want to worry you."a) Who saidb) Why did she say this?c) what would the address	sed be worried about?					
	d this to whom?					
b) Where were they then? c) What was the relationship betwee						
· · · ·	d this to whom?					
b) What did ' this ' refer to? c) How important was that						
CHAPTER SIX	3					
Questions with Model answers						
	ed the locket in the dark river.					
2- What did Monks ask them to forget?						
Monks asked them to forget all about that story of the locket.						
	ey left the old factory alive					
4- Why did Mr. Sikes stay in bed for three weeks?						
Because he had been ill since the night he left Oliver in the field ou						
	and the Artful Dodger.					
6- What did Sikes need from them?						
Bill Sikes asked Fagin to send him some money with Nancy .						
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	some work in the streets .					
	introduced Nancy to Monks.					
9- Why did Nancy walk quietly upstairs?						
Nancy wanted to hear what Fagin and Monks were saying. 10- What did Fagin tell Nancy about his talk with Monks?						
He told her that they had a little business to do.						
11- Why did Nancy cry? Nancy was crying because of what	she had heard the men sav					
12- Why did Nancy go to the hotel?	one had heard the men day .					
Nancy went to the hotel to meet Mrs. Maylie to tell her about Oliver.						
13- Who met Nancy at the hotel at first?						
A woman at the hotel desk looked up in surprise when she saw Na	ncy.					
14- Why did the servant doubt that Mrs. Maylie would meet Nar						
As Nancy was a poor young woman with an old shawl round her sh						
15- What did Nancy tell Rose about Oliver?						
Nancy told Rose that Monks wanted to put his brother Oliver in prison						
16- What did Nancy tell Rose about Monks?						
He was an evil man and he wanted Fagin to make Oliver a thief						
17- What could explain who the boy was?	the better of the state					
What could explain who the boy really was the locked which lied at	the pottom of the river					
18- Why did Monks want Oliver to go to prison?						
84						
nenenenenenenenenenenenenenenenenenene						

Hello English

Second Term



First Year Hello English Second 1	erm					
 b- Did they come to the right place? Why? c- What work can they get? b- Who said this to whom? b- How could the speaker protect them? - Yes, because they all are thieves. -They can work as thieves. -They can work as thieves. -Fagin to Noah and Charlotte. -He will not tell the police about them 						
c- What crime did they commit before coming? - They stole Mr. Sowerberry's money.						
6."Now we can all forget all about this story, can't we?"						
1. Who said this to whom? - Monks said this to Mr. and Mrs. Bumble						
Where were they and what had the speaker just done?						
- They were in an old factory in the slums and Monks had just dropped the gold locket into th	e river.					
3. What does he want them to forget and why?	- 1-					
- He wants them to forget that they met him and gave him the locket. He doesn't want anyon	e to					
know about it or about who Oliver is. 7. "He said that the only thing that could explain who the boy really is lies at the botto	m of the					
river. "						
1. Who said this to whom? - Nancy said this to Rose.						
2. Whose speech is the person reporting? - She's reporting Monk's speech (to Fagin).						
3. What is it that lies at the bottom of the river?						
- The gold locket that Nurse Sally had stolen from Oliver's mother lies at the bottom of the riv						
8. "It was easy to take money from Mr. Sowerberry. So we can also take things from ot	her					
people. I think I would be a good thief "						
 Who said this to whom? Noah Claypole said this to his wife Charlotte. Where were they when he or she said this? 						
- They were in an inn in London, where they were eating dinner.						
3. Who overheard these words and what was the result?						
- Fagin overheard this and he offered to let them join his gang of thieves. They agreed.						
9-" Don't worry. The only thing that is going in the water is the locket "						
a) Who said this quotation ?To whom? - Monks to Mr. Bumble and Mrs. Bumble.						
b) What was inside the locket ? - The name of Oliver's mother.						
10-"Now we can all forget all about this story, can't we"						
a) Who said this quotation ?To whom? - Monks to Mr. Bumble and Mrs. Bumble.						
b) What as the story ? - The truth about Oliver's mother.						
 11-" He wanted Fagin to make Oliver a thief." a) Who said this quotation ?To whom? Nancy to Rose 						
b) Why did he wanted Oliver to be a thief ?						
-To make him go to prison. And to take Oliver's money						
أسئكة الكتاب المدرسي						
 <u>B. Answer these questions.</u> 1. What did Monks throw into the water? Why did he say they could all forget about it? 	Why					
was Mr. Bumble happy to leave the old factory alive? Sound as threw in the locket that ha						
stolen from Oliver's mother. He didn't want Mr. and						
Mrs. Bumble to talk about what he did. Mr. Bumble had been afraid that Monks would kill him	1					
and Mrs. Bumble, so he was happy to still be alive.						
2. Approximately how long was Bill Sikes away from London? How long has he been ill in						
bed? The was away for several months — most of the time that Oliver was with the Maylies. He						
has been back for three weeks and ill in bed all that time.						
3. Why did Nancy go to Fagin's house? Who did she meet there? What did						
3. Why did Nancy go to Fagin's house? Who did she meet there? What did she do while Fagin and that person were talking? She went to Fagin's house to get sor						
3. Why did Nancy go to Fagin's house? Who did she meet there? What did she do while Fagin and that person were talking? She went to Fagin's house to get sor money for Bill Sikes. She met Monks, who had come to talk to Fagin. Fagin and Monks went						
3. Why did Nancy go to Fagin's house? Who did she meet there? What did she do while Fagin and that person were talking? She went to Fagin's house to get sor money for Bill Sikes. She met Monks, who had come to talk to Fagin. Fagin and Monks went to talk privately, but Nancy crept upstairs and listened to their conversation.						
 3. Why did Nancy go to Fagin's house? Who did she meet there? What did she do while Fagin and that person were talking? She went to Fagin's house to get sor money for Bill Sikes. She met Monks, who had come to talk to Fagin. Fagin and Monks went to talk privately, but Nancy crept upstairs and listened to their conversation. 4. What did Nancy learn from Monks? What did she do with that information? 						
3. Why did Nancy go to Fagin's house? Who did she meet there? What did she do while Fagin and that person were talking? She went to Fagin's house to get sor money for Bill Sikes. She met Monks, who had come to talk to Fagin. Fagin and Monks went to talk privately, but Nancy crept upstairs and listened to their conversation.						

hotel to tell Rose Maylie all of this. **5. Oliver was very happy to have seen someone in London. Who was it? Where did he talk to him?** Soliver saw Mr. Brownlow. He got the address, and Rose and Oliver went to meet him at his home.



Hello English

Second Term

6. What important news does Fagin receive at the end of the chapter?

Se Fagin learns that the police have arrested the Artful Dodger.

C. Write True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences.

1. Monks tries to throw Mr. and Mrs. Bumble into the river. (a). F - He throws in the gold locket. He does not try to kill them.

2. Fagin and the boys brought Sikes food but no money. \top

3. Monks and Fagin talked in the room where Nancy was.

> F - They went upstairs to talk but Nancy secretly followed them and overheard them.

4.Nancy cried when she left Fagin's house. \top

5. Rose Maylie refused to meet Nancy.

S. F - A hotel servant got permission for Nancy to go upstairs to Rose

6. Oliver heard what Nancy told Rose. 6. F - He came into the room after Nancy had left.

7. Mr. Brownlow agreed to go to the police.

S. F - He said that going to the police would not help Oliver.

8. Noah Claypole came to London to start a business. 8. F - He came to be a thief.

E. Read the quotations and answer the questions.

1."Now we can all forget all about this story, can't we?"

1. Who said this to whom? 1. Monks said this to Mr. and Mrs. Bumble.

2. Where were they and what had the speaker just done? 2. They were in an old factory in the slums and Monks had just dropped the gold locket into the river.

3. What does he want them to forget and Why? 3. He wants them to forget that they met him and gave him the locket. He doesn't want anyone to

know about it or about who Oliver is.

2. "He said that the only thing that could explain who the boy really is lies

at the bottom of the river. "

1. Who said this to whom? 1. Nancy said this to Rose.

2. Whose speech is the person reporting? 2. She's reporting Monk's speech (to Fagin).

3. What is it that lies at the bottom of the river? 3. The gold locket that Nurse Sally had stolen from Oliver's mother lies at the bottom of the river.

3. "It was easy to take money from Mr. Sowerberry. So we can also take

things from other people. I think I would be a good thief "

1. Who said this to whom? 1. Noah Claypole said this to his wife Charlotte.

2. Where were they when he or she said this?

2. They were in an inn in London, where they were eating dinner.

3. Who overheard these words and what was the result?

3. Fagin overheard this and he offered to let them join his gang of thieves. They agreed.

<u>QUESTIONS FÓR HŎŇEWORK</u>

1-Answer the following questions:-

- 1. What did Monks do to get rid of the evidence that proved who Oliver was.
- 2. Being in the factory was a nightmare كابوس for the Bumbles. Justify.
- 3. How was Noah in disguise ?
- 4. Despite kidnapping Oliver Nancy was a faithful and sincere character? Illustrate.
- 5. On what condition did Fagin agree to employ Noah and Charlotte?
- 6. What did Noah and Charlotte do for Fagin?
- 7. Why did Nancy go with Fagin to his house?
- 8. Why did Monks want to speak to Fagin privately?
- 9. What made Nancy listen to the conversation between Fagin and Monks? What did she do?
- 10. Why was Nancy worried when she left Fagin's house with money?
- 11. What was Nancy thinking about when she was returning to Sikes with the money?
- 12. What made Nancy go to a hotel in London after taking the money?
- 13. What attracted the woman at the hotel desk's attention concerning Nancy?
- 14. Who did Nancy want to speak to in the hotel? Why?
- 15. When did the woman at the hotel desk allow Nancy to meet Rose?
- 16. Show that Nancy was interested in Oliver's affairs.
- 17. What do you think of Nancy? Do you sympathise with her? Why? Why not?
- 18. Monks was wicked and a devil.
- 19. How could Rose help Oliver in Nancy's opinion?

Hello English

Second Term

- 20. Could Rose meet Nancy if she liked? When and where?
- 21. Why was Rose worried and upset after Nancy's visit?
- 22. Where did Oliver see Mr. Brownlow? What did he do?
- 23. Who would accompany Oliver to Mr. Brownlow's? How could they go there?
- 24. What made Rose admire Mr. Brownlow when she first met him?
- 25. What did Rose tell Mr. Brownlow about Oliver?
- 26. Mr. Brownlow was sympathetic with Oliver. Explain.
- 27. How much did Oliver love Mrs. Bedwin?
- 28. What did Brownlow decide to do when Rose told him about Nancy?
- 29. In Mr. Brownlow's opinion, what should they do first to solve Oliver's problem with Monks?
- 30. What was Mr. Brownlow's opinion about Dr Losberne's suggestion?
- 31. Who did Mr. Brownlow and Dr Losberne suggest to help them? Why?
- 32. Where did Noah and Charlotte go after their marriage?
- 33. What did Noah and Charlotte look for when they reached London?
- 34. Why did Noah think he would be a good thief?
- 35. Who was listening to Noah's and Charlotte's conversation? What did he do?
- 36. What did Noah charge Charlotte with?

2-Read the quotations and answer the questions:-

1-"Now we can all forget all about this story, can't we?"

- a) Who said this to whom? b) Where were they and what had the speaker just done?
- c) What does he want them to forget and why?

2-"He said the only thing that could explain who the boy really is lies at the bottom of the river"

a) Who said this to whom? b) Whose speech is the person reporting?

c) What is it that lies at the bottom of the river?

3-"It was easy to take money from Mr. Sowerberry. So we can also take things from other people. I think I would be a good thief."

a) Who said this to whom? b) Where were they when he or she said this?

c) Who overheard these words and what was the result?

4-"Every Sunday night at eleven o'clock. I'll walk across London Bridge."

a) Who said this to whom? b) Where were they at that time?

c) What do you think of the speaker?

5-"I believe you were very kind to a young friend of mine." a) Who said this to whom?b) Who was the speaker talking about? c) Where was that friend then?

6- "We must go and see him. We will take a coach at once." a) Who said this to whom?b) Who was the speaker talking about? c) Why must they go and see him?

7- I knew I would see you again. You look like a gentleman's son!"

a) Who said this and when? b) Where was Oliver during the last period?

c) What was the speaker's attitude towards Oliver?

8- "We must speak to this man Monks alone. We can ask Nancy where we can find him."

a) Who said this to whom? b) Why did they have to speak to Monks?

c) Why was Nancy the only person who could help them find Monks?

9- "I didn't steal anything. It was her!" a) Who said this to whom?

b) Who did "her" he refer to? c) What do you think of the speaker's behaviour?

10- "Tomorrow, I'll show you where you can take money from children who have been sent by their mothers to buy things ." a) Who said this to whom?

b) Was that work suitable for them? Why? Why not?
c) What did the speakers want them to do?
11- "Thank you. I'm Mr. Morris. And this is my wife Mrs. Bolter."
a) Who said this to whom?
b) Who! did the speaker thank the addressed person for?
c) Was the speaker telling the truth?

- 12 "I don't think she will want to see someone like you." a) Who said this to whom?
- b) What made her say so? c) What did ' <u>she</u> ' refer to ?

13- "Please! Tell her I must speak to her. a) Who said this to whom?

b) Why did the speaker request that? c) Was the speaker given permission to speak to her? **14- "You keep half of what you take and you get food and a bed"**

a) Who said this to whom? b) Did the make that deal? c) Where would the other half go to?

Hello English

Second Term

CHAPTER SEVEN

Questions with model answers

1- What was the first job for Noah (Morris Bolter)? Noah was to go and found out what was happening to the Artful Dodger so Fagin gave Noah directions to the magistrate which he followed carefully through the busy streets of London 2- How did the Artful Dodger challenge the magistrate ? He asked the magistrate to send him to prison and told him that his lawyer would set him free again and the magistrate would be in trouble. 3- What did Nancy try to do at eleven o'clock? Nancy tried to go out but Mr. Sikes told her it was too late and locked the door. 4- Why did Fagin decide that Nancy should be watched? Because he she was planning something . 5- Why was Fagin pleased with Noah on his first day on the streets? Because Noah had taken money, milk and bread from the children of rich families. 6- How did Fagin praise يمتدح Noah? Fagin told Noah that he was good for a beginner . 7- What did Fagin ask him to do after that? Fagin asked Noah to watch Nancy . He wanted Noah to find out where she went ,who she saw and what she said. He promised Noah to give him a pound note 8- When and where did Noah follow Nancy? On Sunday at quartet to eleven, Noah followed Nancy to London Bridge . 9- Who did Nancy meet on the Bridge ? She met rose and Mr. Brownlow and Nancy took them down some dark steps as she was afraid to speak to them where there was light. 10- Why couldn't Nancy meet them the week before ? Because the door was locked 11- How did Nancy help Mr. Brownlow to find Monks? Nancy told them about the inn where he stayed .He was tall and strong with dark hair and eyes . He was 28 years old but looked much older .He always looked nervous 12- Mr. Brownlow knew Monks before .Discuss. Mr. Brownlow recognized monks from Nancy's description and he told her that Monks had a red mark on his neck. 13- How did Mr. Brownlow try to help Nancy? Mr. Brownlow wanted to help her so he offered to take her with them away from their old life. 14- Why didn't Nancy go with Rose and Mr. Brownlow? They couldn't persuade her to go with them and they realised that they couldn't change her mind . 15-What did Noah do after he saw Nancy with Mr. Brownlow? Noah ran back to Fagin's house to tell Fagin about Nancy's meeting with Mr. Brownlow. 16- What was Fagin's reaction after knowing the meeting of Nancy with Mr. Brownlow? Fagin was furious and sent a boy to tell Mr. Sikes to visit him at once. 17- How did Fagin provoke Mr. Sikes against Nancy? Fagin asked Mr. Sikes what he do if he found out that a friend had told people all about their gang. Mr. Sikes said that he would punish that person so Fagin made Noah tell him about what he had heard at the bridge and who had seen. 18- How far did that provocation succeed? Mr. Sikes jumped up and ran out of the house after that he killed Nancy. 19- How did Mr. Sikes try to escape? After killing Nancy, Mr. Sikes locked the door to his house and left London before it was light .He did not want anyone to see him. He travelled all day until he was in the countryside north of London. He slept in the open and drank water from lakes. 20-Why did Mr. Sikes plan to go to London again? Because he heard some people talking about him and that the police had known that he was going to Birmingham . 21- How did Mr. Brownlow threaten Monks? Mr. Brownlow ordered the two guards to take Monks into the street and call the police if he didn't do what they said . 22- Show that Monks recognized Mr. Brownlow. He asked Mr. Brownlow not be unkind to him as Mr. Brownlow was his father's oldest friend. 23- How did Mr. Brownlow make Monks realise that he knew him well? Mr. Brownlow said that he was Monk's father's oldest friend and he was going to marry Monk's aunt before she died. He reminded Monks of his true name (Edward Leeford) 24- What did Mr. Brownlow accuse Monks of?

He accused Monks of taking all his father's money which one of their relatives left his father but his father became ill in Italy and died. No will was found so Monks took all the money.

Hello English

Second Term

25-What did Mr. Brownlow tell Monks about Olive	er's birth?
Monks's father married a young woman called Agnes	
a painting of her which he put on his wall. Agnes had	
26- How did Mr. Brownlow tell Monks it wasn't a	
Mr. Brownlow told Monks that he saw that Oliver lool	ked very like the young woman in the
painting .and he accused Monks of kidnapping Olive	
27- Why did Mr. Brownlow go to the West Indies	
He went there to find Monks as he believed that Mo	
28- How did Monks respond to these accusations	
Monks told Mr. Brownlow that he hadn't had a brothe	er.
Oliver of h يحرم 29- What did Monks do to deprive يحرم	is father's money?
He burnt the will .He dropped the locket in the river	which showed who the boy was.
making all those يعترف 30- When did Monks admit	e mistakes?
When he knew that Nancy was killed and he could b	e accused of killing her.
31- When could Mr. Brownlow believe Monks?	
He told Monks if he promised to tell everyone what I	
32-What news did Dr Losberne tell Mr. Brownlow	
Dr Losberne told him that a policeman told him that t	he man who killed Nancy was coming
back to London .	
33- What order did Mr. Brownlow give Monks?	
Mr. Brownlow ordered monks to stay in the room unt	il he could return to be safe.
*Quotations with model answers:-	
1-"Send me to prison, I don't care."	
	-The Artful Dodger to the magistrate.
	is arrested by the police as he was a thief.
c-What was the addressed person's reaction?	
- He ordered the policeman to take the speaker a	
2-"Find out where she goes, who she sees and w	
a- Who said this to whom?	- Fagin to Noah.
b- Who was the speaker talking about?	- Nancy.
c- Why did the speaker want that person to be follo	
-Because he suspected her and knew she was pl	
3-"I did not think my father's oldest friend would	
a- Who said this to whom?	-Monks to Mr. Brownlow.
b- How was the listener unkind to the speaker?	aliah and liar
- He treated him unkindly as he was a criminal, fo	
c- What was the listener's reply to these words?	ng to marry his quat
- He was his father's oldest friend and he was goi	
4-"But before he went to Italy, he visited me. He tage of the said this to whom?	- Mr. Brownlow to Monks.
b- Who was the speaker talking about?	- Monk's father.
c- Did the listener agree with the speaker?	- No, he didn't.
5-"The door was locked and I couldn't come."	
a- Who said his to whom?	- Nancy to Brownlow and Rose.
b- Who locked the door?	- Sikes.
c- Where was the speaker going?	-To meet Brownlow and Rose
6-" Where are you going at this time?"	To meet brownow and rese
a) Who said this quotation? To whom?	- Mr. Sikes to Nancy
b) Where was she going? Why?	-To the Bridge to meet Rose
7-"You are good for a beginner . Now I have a nic	
a) Who said this quotation? To whom?	- Fagin to Noah
b) What was the nice job?	- To watch Nancy
8-" Why have you brought us to this strange place	
a) Who said this quotation? To whom?	- Mr. Brownlow to Nancy
b)Why was the place strange ?	- Because it was dark.
9-" We need to find Monks . And if we cannot find	
a) Who said this quotation? To whom?	- Mr. Brownlow to Nancy
b) Did the addressee help the speaker?	- Yes , she told him about Monks.
10-"He has a red mark."	

Hello English

Second Term

a) Who said this quotation ? To whom?	- Mr. Brownlow to Nancy.	
b) Who did he talk about ?	- About Monks.	
	It showed that Mr. Brownlow knew Monks.	
a) Who said this quotation? To whom?	at a friend had told people all about our gang?" - Fagin to Bill Sikes	
b) Who did he talk about ?	- About Nancy	
12-"If he doesn't do what we saw , take him		
a) Who said this quotation ? To whom?	- Mr. Brownlow to the guards.	
b) What did the underlined word refer to ?	-To Monks.	
13-"I didn't think my father's oldest friend w		
a) Who said that ?To whom?b) Who was the oldest friend?	-Monks to Mr. Brownlow. -Mr. Brownlow	
14-'That's why I have you here ,Edward Lee		
name of your family."		
a) Who said this quotation ? To whom?	- Mr. Brownlow to Monks.	
b) Who was Edward Leeford ?	 He was Monks who changed his name 	
15-" This is just a story."		
a) Who said that ? To whom?	-Monks to Mr. Brownlow.	
 b) What did he mean a story ? 16-" It is not. I could see that he looked very 	-The story that Oliver was his brother	
a) Who said This quotation ? To whom?	-Mr. Brownlow to Monks	
b) who was the woman in the painting?	-Oliver's mother	
17-" You know you have a brother. Your fat		
a) Who said This quotation ? To whom?		
b) Who was the brother ?	-Oliver	
c) What did Monks do with the will ? -Me 18-" It is true about the locket .But it wasn't		
a) Who said that ?To whom?	- Monks to Mr. Brownlow.	
	- Monks threw it in the river	
	- Bill Sikes killed the woman (Nancy)	
19-"If you promise to tell everyone what ha	s happened . then perhaps I will believe vou."	
a) Who said this quotation ? To whom?b) What was he going to believe ?	- Mr. Brownlow to Monks	
,		
20-"Find out where she goes, who she sees	• •	
1. Who says this to whom? - Fagin says t	31 ()	
2. Who is the person talking about? The is tal		
	wed? > He wants her followed because he thinks	
she is planning something and he wants to kno	elp you. Come with us, away from your old life. "	
	Mr. Brownlow said this to Nancy at London Bridge	
	he had given him information on how to find Monks.	
3. Did the listener accept the offer? What was		
She didn't accept the offer. She was killed by		
3. "I did not think my father's oldest friend		
1. Who says this to whom?	Solution Soluti Solution Solution Solution Solution Solution Solution S	
2. Where was this?	➣. This was at Mr. Brownlow's house.	
	eaker? $>$. He had kidnapped him and brought him to	
his house and he was making him sit and talk		
لمادرىيىسى	أسئلة الكتاب الم	
B. Answer these questions.		
1. What two jobs did Noah Claypole (Morris	Bolter) do for Fagin?	
>> Noah (Morris) went to see what had happened to the Artful Dodger who is now with the		
police. Then he followed Nancy to see who she spoke with and what she said.		
2. Where did Nancy talk to Rose and Mr Brownlow? Did anyone hear their conversation?		
	them down some steps next to the bridge to talk	
in a dark place. Noah Claypole/Morris Bolter heard their conversation.		

Hello English

Second Term

First Year	Hello English	Second Term			
3 Why did Eagin cond com	eone to follow Nancy2 ~ Eagin wa	suspicious of her because the			
3. Why did Fagin send someone to follow Nancy? . Fagin was suspicious of her because the					
previous week she had tried to go out walking at 11 o'clock at night.					
4. What did Nancy tell Rose and Mr. Brownlow? What did Mr. Brownlow try					
to do for Nancy? Did she accept his offer? >>. Nancy told them what Monks looked like and where they could probably find him. Mr. Brownlow					
	her life of crime. She refused.				
	ncy when Fagin told him that she had	ad told			
	Where did Sikes go after that?				
	-	of London and hid. (After a			
Sikes killed Nancy. Then he went away to the countryside north of London and hid. (After a week he heard people talking about the murder and he went back to London because he heard					
	the police thought he was in Birmingham.)				
	<u>C. Write True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences.</u>				
1. The magistrate sent the A					
•	on the first Sunday after their mee	•			
	laylie talked with Nancy on Londor	•			
	d Rose Maylie, and they talked on the				
-	es what had happened at the bridge				
	se she had told others about the g	ang. T			
	dest friend of Monks's father. T				
7. Mr. Brownlow was marrie					
7. F - He was going to marry					
<u>E. Read these quotations a</u>	<u>nd answer the questions.</u> 5, who she sees and what she says	Can you do that?"			
	S, who she sees and what she says				
•	g about? The is talking about Nancy				
•	ant the person followed? \succeq . He was				
	d he wants to know what it is.				
	s. Now let us help you. Come with	<u>us, away from your old life.</u>			
1. Who said this to whom a		w said this to Nancy at London			
Bridge.					
2. How had the person help	•				
She had given him inform					
	e offer? What was the result?				
	She was killed by Sikes as a result.				
	<u>'s oldest friend would be so unking</u>	<u>a to me. "</u>			
•	Solution So				
	ng unkind to the speaker? >>. He ha	ad kidnanned him and brought him			
	ing him sit and talk about himself and				
	ESTIONS FOR HOME				
<u>1-Answer these questions:</u>					
	- oah Claypole (Morris Bolter) do for	Fagin?			
	k to Rose and Mr. Brownlow?				
	r conversation? Who?				
•	someone to follow Nancy?				
5. What did Nancy tell Rose and Mr. Brownlow?					
6. What did Mr. Brownlow try to do for Nancy? Did she accept his offer?					
7. What did Sikes do to Nancy when Fagin told him that she had told someone about the					
gang? Where did Sikes go after that?					
8. Why did Mr. Brownlow travel to the West Indies?					
9. Who told Mr. Brownlow about Monks.					
10. What was Mr. Brownlow doing while Nancy was talking about Monks?					
11. What did Nancy tell Mr. Brownlow about Monks?					

- Could Rose and Mr. Brownlow persuade Nancy to change her old life? Why?
 Why did Fagin send for Sikes after Noah had returned from watching Nancy?

Ø

Hello English

Second Term

- 14. What did Fagin tell Sikes about Nancy's behaviour?
- to her group? خائنة to her group?
- 16. Sikes suffered a lot after leaving London. Explain
- 17. Why did Sikes decide to return to London?
- 18. What did Monks do as he sat down carrying out Mr Brownlow's orders?
- 19. What was the relation between Mr. Brownlow and Monks's father?
- 20. How did Mr. Brownlow treat عامل Monks? Whv?
- 21. What did Monks's father's relative leave him?
- 22. What happened to Monks's father when he was in Italy?
- 23. What did Monks's father tell Mr Brownlow before he traveled to Italy?
- 24. What did Mr. Brownlow notice when he first saw Oliver?
- 25. How did Mr. Brownlow recognize Oliver?
- 26. Why did Mr. Brownlow go to the West Indies?
- 27. Monks was a criminal. Do you agree? Give reasons for your answer.
- to Monks? الموجهة were directed الاتهامات to Monks
- and selfish أنانى Explain. أنانى 29. Monks was greedy
- 30. When could Mr. Brownlow believe Monks?
- 31. What news did Dr Losberne bring to Mr. Brownlow?
- 32. Monks still had hope of staying safe. What was it?
- 33. Fagin accused Nancy of betraying خيانته them. Do you agree with him? Why? Why not?
- 34. Where was Nancy going at midnight?

35.	What did Rose and Mr.	Brownlow try to persu	ade Nancy to do? Did they s	succeed?
2-Read	these quotations and a	nswer the questions:-		

- 1- "Find out where she goes, who she sees and what she says. Can you do that?" a)Who says this to whom? b)Who is the person talking about?
- c)Why does the speaker want the person followed? 2- "Thank you for helping us. Now let us help you. Come with us, away from your old life. "
 - a) Who said this to whom and where was it? b) How had the person helped the speaker? c) Did the listener accept the offer? What was the result?
- 3- "I did not think my father's oldest friend would be so unkind to me. "
- a) Who says this to whom?
- c) How was the person being unkind to the speaker?
- 4- "He was 28 but looks much older. He always looks nervous and on his neck he has......" b-Who is the speaker talking about?

b)Where was this?

- a- Who said this to whom?
 - c- What does he have on his neck?

5- "So I went to the West Indies where you were working when I last heard of you."

- a- Who is the speaker?
- c- Did the speaker meet him there?
- 6 "I don't feel well. I would like to have a walk."
- a) Who said this to whom?

b) Was the speaker telling the truth? Why?

b- Who was working in the West Indies?

- c) Where was the speaker going?
- 7- "The door was locked and I could not come." a) Who said this to whom?
- b) Where was the door locked? c) Why was the speaker going and couldn't?
 - 8- "Yes, they say the killer has gone north to Birmingham. I hope they catch him." b) Who was the killer?
 - a) Who said this to whom?
 - c) Did the killer overhear these words? What did he do then?
 - 9- "Did you hear that a woman was killed in London last week?"
 - a) Who said this to whom? Where? b) Who was that woman?
 - c) What did the killer decide to do as soon as he / she heard these words?
 - 10- "If he does not do what we say, take him into the street and call the police." b) Who was the speaker talking about?
 - a) Who said this to whom?
 - 3- Why did the speaker threaten to do?
 - 11- "I did not think my father's oldest friend would be so unkind to me."
 - a) Who said this to whom?

b) How was the listener unkind to the speaker?

Hello English

Second Term

c) What was the listener's reply to these words?

<u>CHAPTER EIGHT</u>

Questions with Model answers

1- Who was Toby Crackit ? He was the thief who had been with Mr Sikes and Oliver when they tried to break into Mrs. Maylie's house.

2-Where did Toby and the two other criminals hide? Toby, Chitling and Kags were hiding in an old house by the river. In a part of London that few people knew.

3- How was the area of the poorest slums? The overcrowded streets were full of unwanted smells and mud. It was an area of great poverty, where people lived with little hope.

4-What were the criminal discussing?

They were discussing the surprising events that had happened earlier that day.

5- What were the surprising events that had happened earlier that day?

The police caught Fagin and Bolter .All the other people in the gang were taken by the police. But Chitling and Charley Bates escaped through a window.

6- How was Mr. Sikes in disguise ?

Mr. Sikes put a handkerchief across his mouth and a large hat .He wanted to hide in the house. **7-What was Charley's reaction when he saw Mr Sikes?**

Charley accused him of killing Nancy then jumped on Mr Sikes and they began to fight.

However , Mr. Sikes was far too strong for the boy , and soon Charley was lying on the floor.

8- How far was Charley brave? Although Mr. Sikes was too strong for him, he fought with him and he shouted that the killer was here so people heard his calls and came to the house.

9-Who was the man on the horse who came with the people to the house ?

The man on the horse was Mr. Brownlow who was giving instructions.

10- What did Mr. Sikes tell the people in the street?

Mr. Sikes opened the window and told them that they would never take him to prison.

11- What did Mr. Brownlow do to catch Mr. Sikes?

He asked for a ladder so that they could climb up to the window so Mr. Sikes climbed onto the roof of the old building. Brownlow offered fifty pounds to the man who would take Mr. Sikes alive.

12- Why would no one have the fifty pounds from Mr. Brownlow?

Because Mr. Sikes jumped into the river where the tide was too low so he died.

13-Who were in the two coaches and where did they go ?

Oliver was traveling to the workhouse in a coach with Mrs. Maylie , Rose , Mrs. Bedwin and Dr Losberne . Behind them , a coach carried Mr. Brownlow , Mr. Grimwig and Monks.

14- How did Oliver feel when he saw the workhouse area?

Oliver was amazed and excited .He told Rose about his memories in the place and hoped that he could give clothes to his orphan friends and taught them how to read and write.

15- Who did Mr. Brownlow introduce to Oliver in the hotel?

He introduced Monks (Oliver's half brother)

16-What were the names of Oliver's parents ?

Oliver's mother was called Agnes while his father's name was Edwin Leeford .

17 – What did Monks admit?

He admitted that Oliver was his brother and his father had left a will and a letter to Agnes.

18- What was written in the letter which Monks found on the desk?

His father asked Agnes to keep the gold locket with her name on it.

19-What did they will say ? The will said that some of the money should go to Monks . But there was a lot of money, half of the money should go to Agnes The other half should go to her child, but only if he grew up as a person with good morals .

20- How did Monks plan to get all his father's money?

He didn't want Oliver to be good but to be a thief so that he wouldn't get the money

21-How did Monks try to achieve his plan?

As Oliver grew up, Monks watched him carefully and when Oliver ran away, Monks helped the Artful Dodger to find him so he could introduce Oliver to Fagin to be a thief.

22- What did Mr. Bumble say when he saw Oliver in the hotel? Mr. Bumble said that he was so happy to see Oliver again and he said Oliver had always been such a good boy .

23- Mr. Bumble was a liar .<u>Discuss.</u>

He denied selling the locket to Monks and said that he had never seen him before

24- How did the two servants of the workhouse prove that he was a liar?

They said that they saw Mrs. Bumble taking a gold locket and some papers from nurse Sally's hands when she died

Hello English

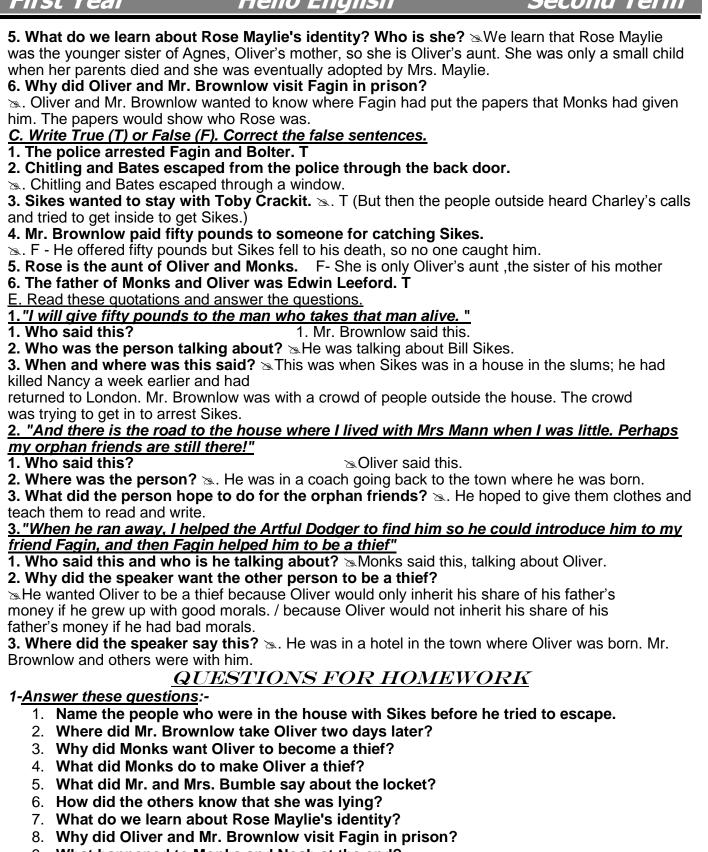
Second Term

25 How did Mrs. Rumble reset ofter that as	
25- How did Mrs. Bumble react after that ac	
She looked down with shame and she admitte	
26- What would Mr. Bumble do to punish th	
He would tell people not to give them a good jo	
27- To what extent did Monks make Oliver I	
He said that Rose was Agnes's younger sister	
28- What happened to Rose after her father	
	ales .Years later she was adopted by Mrs. Maylie
29- How did Oliver feel when he knew that I	
•	smiled at Rose and said that he was very happy they
were relatives.	
	? Because he had been sentenced to death.
31-Why did Mr. Bumble go to see Fagin in I	
To ask for the papers which Monks gave him F	
(They were in a small bag inside the chimney	of his front room.)
32- What did Fagin ask Oliver to do ?	
Fagin asked Oliver to get him out of the prison	but Oliver refused.
33- What happened to Monks at the end of	the story ?
Monks went to America to start a new life and	
34 What happened to Fagin's gang at the	end of the story ?
	e young Charley Bates. After Nancy had died,
he decided that all criminals were bad .He wor	
a happy life .Noah Claypole went on to work a	
35- What happened to Rose at the end of th	
Rose was married Harry Maylie and they lived	
36- How was Oliver rewarded at the end of	
	d went to live near to their good friends Rose
, Harry and Mrs. Maylie. Although he lived a lo	
the many poor children that lived in the city n	
*Quotations with model answers:-	
1-"Not you! You're the one who killed Nand	·v/"
	Charley to Bill Sikes.
	hey were in their hiding house.
	Because she told other people about Sikes bad plans
2-"I will give fifty pounds to the man who ta	
	Ir. Brownlow to the crowd of people in the street.
b- Who was the speaker talking about?	- Bill Sikes.
c- What happened to that man?	- He died.
3-"He is the son of Agnes and your father r	
	· Mr. Brownlow.
b- Who was the speaker talking to?	- Monks.
c- Who is the son of Agnes?	- Oliver.
4-"We saw Mrs. Bumble take a gold locket	
	servant from the workhouse to Mr. Brownlow.
	ecause it proved that Oliver was Monks's half brother.
	ne died.
5-"They are in a small bag inside the chim	
a-Who said this to whom?	
	-Fagin to Oliver.
b-What was the speaker talking about?	aovo him
-He was talking about some papers Monks	
c-Where was the speaker?	-He was in prison.
6-"When your father died, what did you find	
a) Who said this quotation? To whom?	- Mr. Brownlow to Monks
b) what did Monks find on the desk?	- He found a locket and a will
7-"I didn't want the boy to be good .I wante	
	Monks to Mr. Brownlow.
b) why did he want his brother to be a thief? -	
8."I will give fifty pounds to the man who ta	
1. Who said this?	1. Mr. Brownlow said this.
	05
	¹⁹³ A. <u>199</u> . <u>199</u>

Hello English Second Term First Year 2. Who was the person talking about? > He was talking about Bill Sikes. 3. When and where was this said? This was when Sikes was in a house in the slums: he had killed Nancy a week earlier and had returned to London. Mr. Brownlow was with a crowd of people outside the house. The crowd was trying to get in to arrest Sikes. 9. "And there is the road to the house where I lived with Mrs. Mann when I was little. Perhaps my orphan friends are still there!" 1. Who said this? \geq Oliver said this. **2. Where was the person?** > He was in a coach going back to the town where he was born. 3. What did the person hope to do for the orphan friends? >>. He hoped to give them clothes and teach them to read and write. 3. "When he ran away, I helped the Artful Dodger to find him so he could introduce him to my friend Fagin, and then Fagin helped him to be a thief" 1. Who said this and who is he talking about? Monks said this, talking about Oliver. 2. Why did the speaker want the other person to be a thief? > He wanted Oliver to be a thief because Oliver would only inherit his share of his father's money if he grew up with good morals. / because Oliver would not inherit his share of his father's money if he had bad morals. 3. Where did the speaker say this? >>. He was in a hotel in the town where Oliver was born. Mr. Brownlow and others were with him. 10-" I will give fifty pounds to the man who takes that man alive. " 1. Who said this? - Mr. Brownlow said this. 2. Who was the person talking about? - He was talking about Bill Sikes. 3. When and where was this said? - This was when Sikes was in a house in the slums; he had killed Nancy a week earlier and had returned to London. Mr. Brownlow was with a crowd of people outside the house. The crowd was trying to get in to arrest Sikes. 11- "And there is the road to the house where I lived with Mrs. Mann when I was little. Perhaps my orphan friends are still there!" 1. Who said this? - Oliver said this. 2. Where was the person? - He was in a coach going back to the town where he was born. 3. What did the person hope to do for the orphan friends? - He hoped to give them clothes and teach them to read and write. 12-"When he ran away, I helped the Artful Dodger to find him so he could introduce him to my friend Fagin, and then Fagin helped him to be a thief" 1. Who said this and who is he talking about? - Monks said this, talking about Oliver. 2. Why did the speaker want the other person to be a thief? - He wanted Oliver to be a thief because Oliver would only inherit his share of his father's money if he grew up with good morals. / because Oliver would not inherit his share of his father's money if he had bad morals. 3. Where did the speaker say this? - He was in a hotel in the town where Oliver was born. Mr. Brownlow and others were with him . أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي **B.** Answer these questions. 1. Name the people who were in the house with Sikes before he tried to escape. Toby Crackit, Kags, Chitling and Charley Bates were in the house. 2. Where did Mr. Brownlow take Oliver two days later? Who else was there? SMr. Brownlow took Oliver to the town where Oliver was born. They stayed in a hotel in the town. Rose, Mrs. Maylie, Mrs. Bedwin, Dr Losberne, Mr. Grimwig and Monks were also there. 3. Why did Monks want Oliver to become a thief? What did he do to try to make that happen? B His father's will said that Oliver should only get his share of the money if he grew up with good morals, so Monks wanted him to be a thief so he wouldn't get the money. He secretly watched Oliver as he grew up. He sent the Artful Dodger to find him and introduce him to Fagin, who would make him a thief. 4. What did Mr. and Mrs. Bumble say about the locket? How did the others know that they were lying? Mr. and Mrs. Bumble said that they did not sell a locket to Monks and that they had never seen him. But a servant from the workhouse said that she saw Mrs. Bumble take a gold locket and some papers from Nurse Sally when she died.

Hello English

Second Term



- 9. What happened to Monks and Noah at the end?
- to hide in. explain giving reasons. مكان غريب 10. The criminals chose a peculiar place
 - 11. Where did most of Fagin's gang go? Why?
 - 12. What did Kags tell the criminals about the gang?
- 13. Why was Sikes in disguise when he went to the criminals in their hiding place?
- 14. How did Charley look when he saw Sikes? Why?
- 15. What was the result of the fight between Sikes and Charley Bates?
- 16. What was heard as a result of Charley's calls?



Hello English

Second Term

17. Who was giving instructions outside the hiding place? 18. When did Sikes decide to escape from the hiding place? Why? 19. What did Mr. Brownlow raise fifty pounds for? 20. Was Oliver pleased when he saw his birth place again? Explain how? 21. What did Oliver remember when they were travelling to his birth place? 22. How did Oliver look when they passed the workhouse? Why? 23. What did Mr. Brownlow tell Monks about Oliver? 24. Monks's father did not want another bad son like Monks. Explain what he did. 25. Was Monks telling the truth about the locket? How do you know that? 26. Did Mr. Bumble admit selling the locket to Monks? What did he say? 27. What did Mrs. Bumble wish she hadn't done? Why? 28. How did the servants from the workhouse expose Mr. and Mrs. Bumble? 29. What decision did Mr. Brownlow take to punish Mr. and Mrs. Bumble? 30. Did Monks confess knowing Rose? What did he say? 31. What was Oliver's reaction when he discovered that Rose was his aunt? 32. Who did Harry marry? Where did they live? 33. What wouldn't Fagin stay for long in prison although he was a criminal? 34. Did Monks change at last? What happened? 35. Who did Mr. Brownlow adopt? Where did they live? 2- Read these quotations and answer the questions:-1- "At two o'clock, Charley Bates and I escaped through a window, but they also arrested Bolter." a) Who said this to whom? c) Why was Bolter arrested? b) Why did they escape through the window? 2- "Not you! you're the one who killed Nancy!" a) Who said this to whom? b) Where were they? c) Why did he / she kill Nancy? 3- "I will give fifty pounds to the man who takes that alive." a) Who said this to whom? b) Who was the person talking about? c) Where was this said? 4- "And there is the road to the house where I lived with Mrs Mann when I was little. Perhaps my orphan friends are still there!" a) Who said this to whom? b) Where was the person? c) What did the person hope to do for the orphan friends? 5-"This boy is your half-brother. He is the son of Agnes and your father my good friend Edwin Leeford." a) Who said this to whom? b) Who was that boy? c) What was the addressed person's reaction on hearing these words? 6-"When he ran away, I helped the Artful Dodger to find him so he could introduce him to my friend Fagin, then Fagin helped him to be a thief." a) Who said this to whom? And who is he talking about? b) Why did the speaker want the other person to be a thief? c) Where did the speaker say this? 7-"We saw Mrs. Bumble take a gold locket and some papers from Nurse Sally's hands when she died." a) Who said this to whom? b) Why was the gold locket important? c) How did Mrs. Bumble react to this confession? 8-'I am very happy we are relatives." a) Who said this to whom? b) What was the relation between them? c) How did they discover this relation? 9-"Help! The killer is here! Break down the door!" a)Who said this to whom? b)Who was the killer? c)Who did he have killed? 10-"I won't tell you where they are. But I will tell Oliver. Come here, boy." a)Who said this to whom? b)What was the speaker talking about? c)Where were they? 11- "They are in a small bag inside the chimney of my front room. Now please get me out of here." a) Who said this to whom? b) What was the speaker talking about? c) Where was the speaker? 12- "Is it Charley Bates? No one else knows we're here, do they?" a) Who said this to whom? b) Where were they then? c) Was it Charley Bates? Who was he/ she in fact?